CuteFTP Professional 7

User's Guide

globalSCAPE®

Table Of Contents

Getting started with CuteFTP Professional 1
Support 1
CuteFTP 7 Professional New Feature Highlights 3
Getting Started 5
About CuteFTP Professional 5
Registering CuteFTP 5
Troubleshooting product registration 5
Invalid serial number 6
Serial number entered for the wrong product type 6
Registration unable to complete due to a network problem 6
Unable to connect due to proxy settings 6
Lost serial number 6
Making your first connection 7
To make a connection to an FTP site 7
Transferring files and folders 7
To upload files (transfer from a local to remote computer) 7
To download files (transfer from a remote to a local computer) 7
Frequently asked questions 7
How do I set up a connection to my FTP Server? 8
What is my FTP Host Address? 8
What is my user name and password? 8
How do I upload my files with CuteFTP? 8
How do I transfer files from one site to another? 9
How do I navigate the directory tree in CuteFTP? 9
How do I change the permissions of my files (CHMOD)? 9
How do I delete files off my server? 9
Why can't I connect to my FTP site? 9
Does CuteFTP support SSL (FTPS) and SSH2 (SFTP)? 9
How do I connect if I'm behind a firewall? 10
Why won't my files transfer? 10
How do I remove files from CuteFTP that have finished transferring? 10
Installing & removing the software 11
To install 11
Using the Interface 13
CuteFTP Professional's main screen 13

Professional View 13
Home View 14
To use the classic view 14
To hide the Site Manager/Local Drives pane 15
To hide the Individual Session Logs pane 15
To hide the Queue/Log pane 15
Changing to the Home (classic) CuteFTP interface 15
To change to the classic CuteFTP interface 15
To change to the Professional CuteFTP interface 16
Keyboard shortcuts 16
Displaying the Site Manager 18
To display the Site Manager 18
Displaying local files and folders 19
To display files and folders on the local computer 19
Displaying transfer items 19
To display queued files and folders 19
Displaying the connection log 19
To display the connection log 19
Displaying folder contents 20
To view a listing of local folder contents 20
To view listings in a parent folder 20
To update (refresh) a folder listing 20
Displaying an individual log for each connection 20
To display a separate log for a connection 20
Displaying the Status Bar 21
To show/hide the Status Bar 21
Displaying toolbars 21
To hide/show the Quick Connect Bar 21
Lockstep folder navigation 21
To turn on Lockstep Navigation 21
Setting delete prompts 22
To set CuteFTP to ask before deleting files from local drives 22
To set CuteFTP to ask before deleting files from remote sites 22
To set CuteFTP to ask before deleting items from the queue 22
To set CuteFTP to ask before closing a remote pane 23
Showing connection errors in pop-up windows 23
To show connection errors in pop-up windows 23
Customizing toolbars 23
To add a button 23
To remove a button 23
To move a button 24
Thumbnail views 24

To turn on thumbnail view: 24
Local and remote pane views 25
To change the pane view: 25
File and folder properties 25
Local pane information 25
Remote pane information 25
Connecting to Sites 27
Connecting to a site 27
To connect to an existing site within the Site Manager 27
To add an FTP site to the Site Manager 27
Supported URL formats 27
To connect to a URL with the Transfer Engine 28
Using the Connection Wizard to Connect 29
To add a site through the Connection Wizard 29
Using Quick Connect 29
To connect using the Quick Connect toolbar 29
The Quick Connect toolbar 30
Connecting to an HTTP site 30
To connect to an HTTP site 30
Connecting to secure sites 31
To connect to an FTPS (SSL/TLS) site 31
To connect to an SSH2 (SFTP2) site 31
To connect to an HTTPS site 31
Staying connected to sites 32
To turn on Smart Keep Alive 32
To turn off Smart Keep Alive 32
Customizable settings in Smart Keep Alive (SKA) 32
To set the time SKA waits before starting 32
To set how long SKA will run 33
To set when SKA commands are sent 33
To set which SKA commands are sent 33
To set CuteFTP to automatically reconnect 33
Making multiple concurrent connections 34
To open multiple concurrent connections 34
To force CuteFTP to open new connections for multiple transfers 34
To allow multiple connections from CuteFTP 34
To allow multiple connections to the same site 34
To enhance performance with limited resources 35
Performance limitations 35
Creating and using bookmarks 35
To create a bookmark 35
To access a bookmark 35
To modify a bookmark 36

To remove a bookmark 36
To rename a bookmark 36
Using the ACCT command 36
To use ACCT with or without an FTP proxy 36
To use ACCT with an FTP proxy 37
Protecting Site Manager content 37
To require a password to open the Site Manager 37
To change the Site Manager password 37
To remove the Site Manager password 38
Configuration Notes 38
Secure Connections 39
Connecting to Secure Socket Layer (SSL and TLS) sites 39
To connect to an FTP site over SSL 39
To connect to an existing site over SSL 39
To speed up transfers with an SSL site 39
To encrypt the data transfer and not the command connection 40
To configure other SSL settings 40
Creating your own SSL certificates 40
To create an SSL certificate 40
Configuration Notes 41
Having an SSL certificate signed 42
To have a certificate signed 42
Configuration Notes 42
Choosing a certificate for SSL sessions 42
To choose a certificate 42
Accepting server SSL certificates 43
To accept a server's SSL certificate 43
To see your Trusted Certificates 43
Importing or removing SSL certificates from the trusted list 43
To import a certificate to the CuteFTP trusted list 43
To remove an SSL certificate from the trusted list 43
Using a clear data channel with SSL 44
Using a clear command channel with SSL 44
Learning about SSL 45
Explicit security 45
Implicit security 45
SSL Sessions 45
Secure site-to-site transfers using SSCN 46
To transfer files from one server to another securely 46
Troubleshooting SSL Connections 47
SSL Connection Checklist 47
SSL Connection Mechanisms 47
Connecting to HTTPS sites 48

To connect to an HTTPS Site 48
Configuration Notes 48
Connecting to Secure Shell (SSH2) sites 49
To connect to an SSH2 site 49
To choose SSH2 ciphers and authentication methods 49
Authenticating in SSH2 49
To use password authentication 49
To use public key authentication 50
Creating SSH2 key pairs 51
To create your own Private and Public key for SSH2 connections 51
Learning About SSH2 51
Transport Layer 52
Authentication Layer 52
Transport Layer settings 52
To select encryption methods (ciphers) 53
Available encryption algorithms 53
Authentication layer settings 54
To use password authentication 54
Using SSH2 key pairs 54
To use public key authentication in SSH2 54
Configuration Notes 55
Troubleshooting SFTP Connections 55
Configuration Notes 56
Encrypt passwords using OTP 57
To enable OTP for a standard FTP site 57
To enable OTP for an FTP over SSL site 57
Encryption Options 58
Protecting Site Manager content 58
To require a password to open the Site Manager 58
To change the Site Manager password 58
To remove the Site Manager password 58
Configuration Notes 59
Storing and Modifying Sites 61
Adding a site to the Site Manager 61
To add a site to the Site Manager 61
Importing and exporting sites in the Site Manager 61
To add site listings to your Site Manager 62
To replace your Site Manager listings with an imported list 62
To export your Site Manager listings 63
Modifying a site in the Site Manager 63
To change site properties or settings 63
General site properties 63
Site Properties Type 65

Site Properties Actions....66
Site Properties Options....67
Correcting times for sites in different time zones....68
To compensate for servers in different time zones....68
Designating a site's server type....68
To Designate server type....68
Removing a site from the Site Manager....69
Finding a site in the Site Manager....69
To find a site in the Site Manager....69
Creating and using bookmarks....69
To create a bookmark....69
To access a bookmark....69
To modify a bookmark....70
To remove a bookmark....70
To rename a bookmark....70
Transferring Files and Folders....71
Transferring files and folders....71
To upload files (transfer from a local to remote computer)....71
To download files (transfer from a remote to a local computer)....71
Queuing Files and Folders for Transfer....71
To display or hide the queue....71
To add items to the queue....71
Transfer queue icon legend....72
Transferring files in order....73
To transfer items in the order added....73
To set a specific transfer order....73
Stopping transfers....74
To stop a transfer....74
To remove items queued for transfer....74
To resume a stopped transfer....74
To reset a failed transfer....74
Resuming transfers....75
To automatically resume transfers....75
To manually resume a transfer....75
To resume a stopped transfer....75
To reset a failed transfer....75
Using the clipboard to transfer....76
Pasting a URL directly into the transfer engine....77
Scheduling transfers....77
To schedule downloads....77
To schedule uploads....78
To schedule transfers from the queue window....78

Filtering Transfers 79
To transfer filtered items 79
Configuration Notes 79
Site-to-site transfers (FXP) 79
To perform a site-to-site transfer 79
To display more than one remote site at a time 79
History of FXP 81
Multi-part (accelerated) transfers 81
To perform a multi-part download 81
To perform a multi-part upload 81
Accelerating ASCII transfers with Mode Z 82
Transferring files in binary or ASCII mode 82
To choose the transfer mode 82
To transfer specific file types in ASCII mode 82
To transfer specific file types in binary mode 83
Verifying integrity of transferred files 83
To verify files have successfully transferred 83
Compressing and Decompressing 84
To compress files for uploads 84
To decompress a local archive 84
Configuration Notes 85
Using scripts to transfer files 85
Recording a macro 85
Playing back a recorded macro 86
To playback a macro from within CuteFTP's interface 86
To playback a macro (script) from outside of CuteFTP's interface 86
Adding custom commands 87
To add a custom command 87
To add command sequences 87
To use a custom command 87
To display the Custom Commands Bar 88
Saving and reusing a list of transfer tasks 88
To save a list of transfer tasks 88
To reuse a list of transfer tasks (load a previously saved queue) 88
Improving slow transfers 88
Make sure that Mode Z is turned on 88
Tweak the receive and send buffers 89
Turn off time stamp in logs 89
Try using multi-part transfers 89
Check the global bandwidth limit 89
Transferring manually 90
To download a file manually 90
To upload a file manually 90

Manually enter FTP commands 90
To manually enter an FTP command 90
Managing Files and Folders 91
Opening, editing, renaming and deleting files 91
Updating or refreshing folder listings 92
Listing files and folders in order 92
To sort files and folders in order by name 92
To sort files and folders in order in the Queue 92
Changing how files and folders are displayed 93
Finding files and folders 93
To find a file or folder 93
Selecting a group of items 94
Moving items from one folder to another on a remote server 94
To move items from one remote folder to another 95
Changing file and folder permissions 95
To change permissions for a single remote file or folder 95
To change permissions for a group of remote files or folders 95
Choosing which files and folders to display (Filtering) 95
To choose which files to display 96
To choose which folders to display 96
To use filters with transfers 96
To make filters case sensitive 96
To use server filters 97
Displaying hidden files or folders 97
Comparing folder contents by size and date 97
Synchronizing folders 98
Advanced folder synchronization 100
Backing up remote folders 101
To backup a remote folder 101
To discontinue a scheduled backup task 102
Monitoring a local folder for changes 102
To automatically upload changes to a local folder 102
Configuration Notes 102
Listing files from HTTP sites 103
To list files on HTTP sites 103
Configuration notes 103
Settings and Options 105
General settings 105
General settings 105
Log display and capture settings 106
Log file settings 107
Connection settings 108

Connection options 108
Smart Keep Alive options 110
Internet connection (DUN/LAN) settings 111
SOCKS 4 and 5 connection settings 112
Proxy connection settings 114
Security settings 116
Security settings 116
SSH2 security settings 117
SSL security settings 118
Transfer settings 120
Transfer settings 120
Event settings 122
Rename rules settings 124
ASCII Transfer settings 125
Navigation settings 125
Smart Overwrite settings 125
Navigation settings 128
TOC File settings 130
Symbolic Link options 130
Tolerance options 131
Display settings 133
Display settings 133
Sound options 135
Prompt settings 135
Language settings 136
Helper Applications 138
Helper Applications 138
HTML editor settings 139
Choosing display colors for the HTML editor 140
Choosing the folder for HTML code snippets and Java scripts 140
Choosing to write HTML for a specific browser 141
Integrated HTML Editor 143
HTML Editor overview 143
Editor Menu Tools 144
Working with HTML documents 145
Working with HTML 148
Customizing the Editor 156
Transfer Engine (SDK) 161
Transfer Engine Overview 161
Distributing the Transfer Engine 168
Methods 176
Properties 203

Troubleshooting....228
Troubleshooting....239
Error Resolution....239
Can't connect to server....250
Cannot see files or folders....250
Can't connect to SSH2 (SFTP) sites....252
Cannot create multiple connections to the same server....253
Copy and Paste removes files from the remote folder....254
Can't download files from a VMS server....254
Site-to-site transfer limitations....255
High memory usage....255
Transferring to case sensitive servers....256
Overwrite prompts me again and again....256
Using the ACCT command....257
Using CuteFTP behind a router....258
Using CuteFTP with Norton Internet Security 2004....259
Cannot download executables....259
Can't connect from Windows XP....260
Truncated listings....260
Help with scripts....260
Unable to connect to Titan FTP server when using SSL....260
Firewall problems....260
Conserve Local File Time feature doesn't work properly when connected to Serv-u FTP Server....261
Public key authentication failing....262
Index....265

1

Getting started with CuteFTP Professional

If you're new to the Internet or to CuteFTP Professional, here's the information you need to get started.

- CuteFTP Professional's main screen
- Making your first connection
- Transferring files and folders
- What's new

Support

Questions? Navigate to http://www.globalscape.com/support for information on customer service, technical support, software registration, product manuals, and downloads, as well as access to GlobalSCAPE's Knowledge Base and FAQs.

2

CuteFTP 7 Professional New Features

New features for CuteFTP Professional include:

- Transfer files faster using automatic streaming compression to servers supporting the new MODE Z command.
- Transfer files faster over poor connections such as satellite links and legacy CDMA wireless connections by controlling CuteFTP's Send and Receive Buffers.
- View your local and remote images using Thumbnail View just like in Windows Explorer.
- Navigate local and remote directories with a single click when matching directory structures are present using Lockstep Folder Navigation.
- Perform simultaneous bandwidth intensive tasks on your computer by setting the maximum allowed bandwidth for CuteFTP using Bandwidth Throttling.
- Easily negotiate secure connections though NAT devices and firewalls when connecting to servers that support IPv6's EPSV and EPRT port negotiation commands.
- Edit remote files with ease by choosing between Full and Partial Screen Remote Edit modes.
- Set advanced options such as the specific IP Address and Port Range to use when negotiating the connection port though NAT or Firewall devices.
- Schedule concurrent events. Set up as many scheduled events as you like for transfers, synchronizations, monitoring, site backups, etc.
- Faster Startup allows you to start working as soon as you launch the program.
- Show transfer date/time in queue helps determine start and stop time of transfers.
- Even up Panes make it easier to make eyeball comparisons of local and remote directories.
- On Connect Prompts help communicate status during the connection process.
- CTRL key same session transfer enables you to force transfers to occur over the same session.
- Fonts for all panes let you customize the font size and colors used for all views (local, remote, log, queue).
- Automatic Server Port Mapping provides automatic behavior to assist connection to problem servers.
- Miscellaneous enhancements made to improve usability and efficiency.

3

Getting Started

About CuteFTP Professional

You can easily understand and use CuteFTP Professional whether you're a novice or accomplished FTP User. You will find all the features contained in CuteFTP Home and many new additions. CuteFTP Professional embodies the accumulated knowledge gained from the evolution of CuteFTP Professional, now imparted in a more advanced, more secure application.

In CuteFTP Professional, you have a variety of features which enhance file transfer. The accessible interface allows you to easily update and maintain sophisticated Web sites. You can safeguard transfers of mission critical files with CuteFTP Professional's security features. You can speed the transfer of large architectural, graphic, or engineering files with multi-part accelerated downloads. Site caching allows you to minimize bandwidth while you browse. You can even schedule and script FTP transactions with minimal overhead using the autonomous Transfer Engine.

CuteFTP Professional includes the Transfer Engine (TE), and an integrated HTML editor. You can use the Transfer Engine from within CuteFTP, or with any COM enabled scripting or programming language. The HTML editor can create, open, and edit local or remote HTML documents, right in CuteFTP.

Registering CuteFTP

CuteFTP must be registered, or activated, within 30 days or it will no longer function. To register and fully activate your software please input the Registration Serial Number you received when you are prompted to do so. For the registered user name, you may use either your first and last name or your company name. This information appears under Help > About from the menu bar.

To ensure your software is registered accurately, we recommend you provide all of the optional details that are requested. This helps us confirm your eligibility for technical support or any upgrades that may become available in the future.

Troubleshooting product registration

If registration fails, try the following:

INVALID SERIAL NUMBER

Make sure the serial number is valid. It is not case sensitive; however, it is alphanumeric and must be entered exactly as it displays on your invoice or label. If you received a digital invoice, try copying the serial number to the Windows clipboard and then paste it into the serial number box in the registration wizard.

SERIAL NUMBER ENTERED FOR THE WRONG PRODUCT TYPE

Registration serial numbers are specific to a particular product. For example, you cannot register CuteFTP Professional with a CuteFTP Home serial number and vice-versa. Also, a serial number for version 7 can't register version 6 and vice-versa. Double-check your invoice to see what product and version you purchased. Compare that to the product name and version shown in your Help About box or on the Splash screen. If they don't match, then please download the correct product from our website. If you accidentally purchased the wrong product please contact us.

REGISTRATION UNABLE TO COMPLETE DUE TO A NETWORK PROBLEM

Because activation takes place over the Internet, CuteFTP must be able to connect to our registration server to complete the activation process. If it cannot connect or complete the process, it will prompt you with various alternatives. You can go through a manual registration process, where you e-mail us certain information and we subsequently reply with an unlock code, or choose to register via a Web form, which also provides you with an unlock code. The final alternative is to continue as an "unverified" registration, which means that we will honor the serial number you provided as valid for now, and attempt to complete the activation process later once a connection to the registration server is secured (checked at application startup).

Note:
To register successfully, you must be connected to the Internet and have administrator privileges on your computer. If a firewall or proxy server is in use, the network administrator should ensure port 80 is open during the registration process.

UNABLE TO CONNECT DUE TO PROXY SETTINGS

In the Registration Failed dialog, click on the HTTP Proxy button and modify your proxy settings so that CuteFTP can perform HTTP (Web) transactions. If you don't know how to edit these fields, check with your system administrator.

LOST SERIAL NUMBER

If you cannot locate your serial number, you can obtain a copy from GlobalSCAPE Support if you still have the original e-mail address used to purchase the software. If you no longer have access to that e-mail account or don't recall what e-mail address you used, contact

customer service department and provide your name, address, order ID or any other pertinent data that you believe might help us locate your original purchase record.

Making your first connection

TO MAKE A CONNECTION TO AN FTP SITE

1. Select **File > Connect > Connection Wizard.**
2. Type a name for the site in the **Label** field. It can be any name you choose.
3. Enter the address for the site in the **Host** field. You can enter a domain address like ftp.globalscape.com or an IP address such as 192.168.20.52. If you don't know the address, please contact your Web hosting company.
4. In the **Username** field, enter the user name given to you by your hosting provider.
5. In the **Password** field, enter the password given to you by your hosting provider.
6. Click **Connect**. CuteFTP will connect to the remote computer and the site information will be saved in the **Site Manager** for future use.

Transferring files and folders

TO UPLOAD FILES (TRANSFER FROM A LOCAL TO REMOTE COMPUTER)

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. In the Local (left) pane, locate the file or folder you want to upload.
3. Select and drag the item from the Local (left) pane to the Remote (right) pane.

TO DOWNLOAD FILES (TRANSFER FROM A REMOTE TO A LOCAL COMPUTER)

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. In the Remote (right) pane, locate the file or folder you want to download.
3. Select and drag the item from the Remote (right) pane to the Local (left) pane.

Frequently asked questions

- How do I set up a connection to my FTP Server?
- What is my FTP Host Address?
- What is my user name and password?
- How do I upload my files with CuteFTP?
- How do I transfer files from one site to another (CuteFTP Professional only)?
- How do I navigate the directory tree in CuteFTP?
- How do I change the permissions of my files (CHMOD)?
- How do I delete files off my server?

- Why can't I connect to my FTP site?
- Does CuteFTP support SSL (FTPS) and SSH2 (SFTP)?
- How do I connect if I'm behind a firewall?
- Why won't my files transfer?
- How do I remove files from CuteFTP that have finished transferring?
- What is the Transfer Engine (TE)?
- How does CuteFTP Professional & Home differ?
- How can I get a copy of CuteFTP?
- How long does it take to download?
- Do you offer any online or offline support?
- How can I best describe my problem if I contact technical support?

Note:
Reference the troubleshooting section for answers to problems frequently encountered.

How do I set up a connection to my FTP Server?

First time users should use the Connection Wizard, located under File > Connection > Connection Wizard. It will bring up a window that will ask you for a Label for the site and the rest of the login information provided to you by your Web Host Provider.

What is my FTP Host Address?

This information is assigned by your Web Hosting Provider. If you Don't know what the FTP address is or are not sure, you can contact your Web Hosting Provider or Internet Service Provider and they can give that information to you.

What is my user name and password?

Your Web Hosting Provider or Internet Service Provider assigns this information. If you need to find out what this information is, you can contact them and they will be able to give that information back to you.

How do I upload my files with CuteFTP?

First you must connect to your site. Once connected, you can upload your files by browsing to the directory where your files are located on the left hand window of the screen. Click on the files you wish to upload and drag them across to the corresponding right hand window (the server side). You will see the upload progress of your files in the queue window at the bottom of your CuteFTP window.

More on transferring files and folders.

How do I transfer files from one site to another?

In CuteFTP Professional, connect to two different servers. Click on the files you wish to transfer located in the first server window. Drag and drop these files to the second server window and they will be transferred from the first server to the second server.

More on site-to-site transfers.

How do I navigate the directory tree in CuteFTP?

The **Local Drives** pane, located on the left-hand side of the screen, shows files and folders on your computer. The left pane in CuteFTP Professional shows you both the Local Drive pane and the Site Manager as separate tabs. You can navigate your local drives in the same fashion as Windows Explorer.

How do I change the permissions of my files (CHMOD)?

Connect to your server using CuteFTP. Click (highlight) the file you wish to change permissions. Right-click on the file and choose **Properties**. The different options for the permissions are located at the bottom of this dialog box. Only servers that support the CHMOD command will let you change permissions. For the servers that do not support CHMOD, you cannot change permissions.

How do I delete files off my server?

To delete files from your server, simply click on the file you wish to delete and press the **Delete** key on your keyboard. You can also right-click on the file and click **Delete**, or you can click on the file and then click on the red **X** on the toolbar.

Why can't I connect to my FTP site?

If you have tried to log into your FTP site and have been unsuccessful, a window will appear telling you that it could not log in. Click on the button that says **Details** and it will list the exact error message sent to you by the server. Contact your Internet Service Provider or your Web Host Provider with this error message and they will be able to assist you in getting connected.

See Troubleshooting for more help.

Does CuteFTP support SSL (FTPS) and SSH2 (SFTP)?

SFTP, which is a component of SSH2, is supported by CuteFTP Professional only. SSL is supported by Professional and Home editions. Check with your server administrator to verify that the server you are connecting to supports SSL or SFTP (SSH2).

How do I connect if I'm behind a firewall?

If you are behind a firewall and you cannot connect, you will need to set up CuteFTP to connect through that firewall. Go to **Tools > Global Options** and expand the menu option entitled **Connection**. Click on the either **SOCKS4 & 5** or **Proxy Server** option and fill out the information. If you are unsure of whether or not you are behind a Proxy Firewall or a Socks Firewall or are not sure of the specific settings for that firewall, consult your system administrator for the correct settings.

See Troubleshooting for more help.

Why won't my files transfer?

If you've tried to transfer files and they are not transferring, you will receive a window telling you that the files could not be transferred. Click **Details** for more information on the exact error message sent to you by the server. Contact your Internet Service Provider or your Web Hosting Provider with this error message.

See Troubleshooting for more help.

How do I remove files from CuteFTP that have finished transferring?

To remove items from the queue that have already transferred or will not transfer, go to **Tools > Queue > Remove all** and the items will be removed from the queue.

What is the Transfer Engine (TE)?

Built on a modular design platform, CuteFTP Professional's Transfer Engine (TE) is completely independent of the main application interface. Currently, transfers can continue even after the main interface is exited (if enabled in settings). It offers a COM interface that allows application developers to develop custom FTP solutions.

How does CuteFTP Professional & Home differ?

CuteFTP Professional is targeted towards corporate users or prosumers who need extra security, automation, and management tools. It contains everything the Home version has and is equipped with additional tools such as the Transfer Engine (TE), as well as SFTP, HTTPS, site-to-site transfer capability and more. For a comparison of CuteFTP Home and Professional, visit the comparison page.

How can I get a copy of CuteFTP?

CuteFTP is available by download from our website at www.globalscape.com

How long does it take to download?

Download time depends on your modem speed. On a regular 56K modem, CuteFTP will take about 7 minutes. The time to download decreases as your connection speed increases.

Do you offer any online or offline support?

Telephone support for CuteFTP is available to registered customers within 30-days of purchase or who have purchased a support agreement. All other users may submit their questions to our support form or refer to our online knowledge base for assistance.

How can I best describe my problem if I contact technical support?

If you are having a transfer or connection problem, you may want to enable extended listing in the session log window, reproduce the problem and then copy and paste the resulting log in to our online support request form.

Installing & removing the software

TO INSTALL

From a download

1. Download and save CuteFTP from www.globalscape.com.
2. Double-click the executable to run the install.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

From a CD

1. Place the installation CD in your CD-ROM drive. Installation should begin automatically.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
3. If your CD-ROM drive does not support automatic installation
4. Place the installation CD in your CD-ROM drive.
5. Double-click **My Computer** located on the Desktop.
6. Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.
7. Double-click the **Setup.exe** icon.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions.

To remove CuteFTP from your computer

1. Choose **Start > Settings > Control Panel > Add/Remove Program**s.
2. Choose CuteFTP from the list.
3. Select the **Add/Remove** button.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to uninstall CuteFTP.

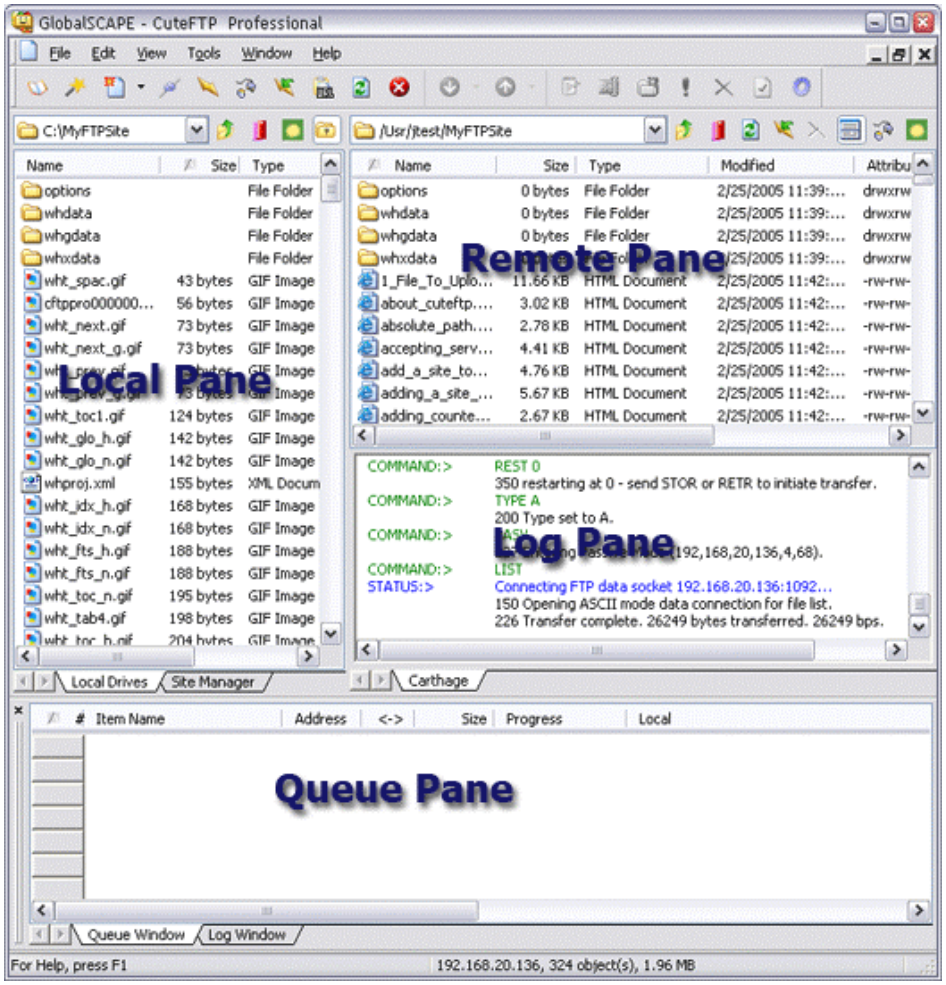
4

Using the Interface

CuteFTP Professional's main screen

PROFESSIONAL VIEW

In Professional (default) View, the main window is divided into four panes: a Local Pane, Remote Pane, Individual Session Logs pane, and Queue Pane. The Local and Remote panes represent files available on local and remote drives, much like Windows Explorer.



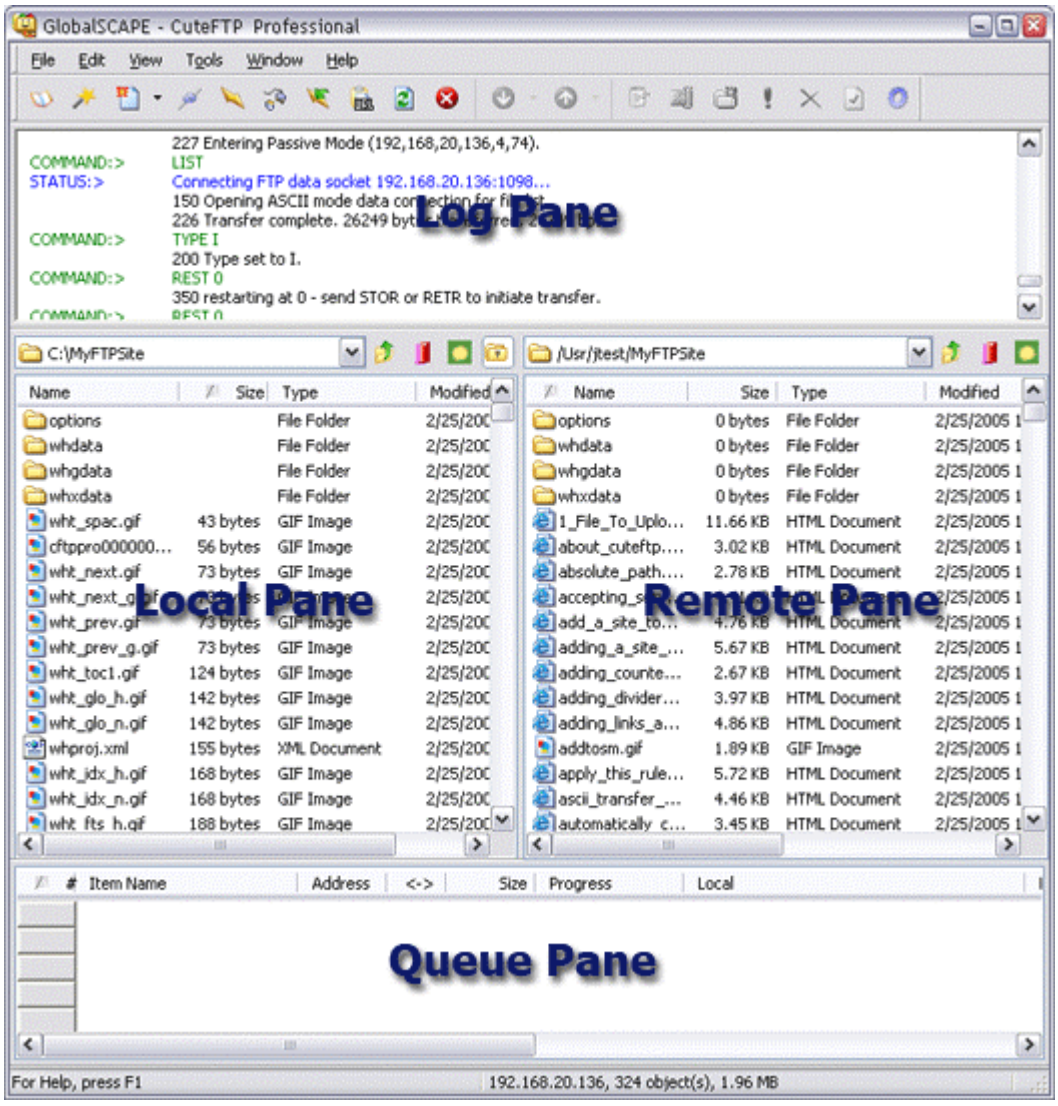
FTP Professsional Main Window

HOME VIEW

You can also choose to use Home View, which is also a four-pane view with the log displayed above the local and remote panes and the queue underneath. This is the classic view found in earlier versions of CuteFTP.

TO USE THE CLASSIC VIEW

- Select **View > Switch to Classic Interface** from the menu.



FTP Professional Main Window, Classic View

TO HIDE THE SITE MANAGER/LOCAL DRIVES PANE

The **Site Manager** displays remote sites with all the connection information already set. The **Local Drives** pane displays files and folders on your computer in the same manner as Windows Explorer.

1. From the menu, choose **View > Show Panes > Local Drives & Site Manager**.
2. Click until the check mark disappears.

Or

- Click until the check mark reappears to show the pane.

TO HIDE THE INDIVIDUAL SESSION LOGS PANE

The **Individual Session Logs** pane displays the FTP connection information for one remote connection.

1. On the menu bar, go to **View > Show Panes > Individual Session Logs**.
2. Click until the check mark disappears.

Or

- Click until the check mark reappears to show the pane.

TO HIDE THE QUEUE/LOG PANE

The **Queue pane** displays file and folder transfers. The **Log pane** displays FTP connection information for all remote sites.

1. On the menu bar, go to **View > Show Panes > Queue & Log Pane**.
2. Click until the check mark disappears.

Or

- Click until the check mark reappears to show the pane.

Note:
The **Remote** pane displays files and folders on FTP sites to which you are connected. It will be blank if you are not connected to any remote sites. You cannot hide the **Remote** pane.

Changing to the Home (classic) CuteFTP interface

You can change the CuteFTP Professional Edition window to look like CuteFTP Home Edition.

TO CHANGE TO THE CLASSIC CUTEFTP INTERFACE

- Select **View > Switch to Classic Interface** from the menu.

TO CHANGE TO THE PROFESSIONAL CUTEFTP INTERFACE

- Select **View > Switch to Pro Interface** from the menu.

Keyboard shortcuts

The **ALT** key allows you to access CuteFTP menu functions through the keyboard. For example, press **ALT+F** to activate the **File** menu. Additional shortcuts are listed below.

Key	Function
BACKSPACE	Move to parent folder
NUMBER PAD +	Group select
NUMBER PAD -	Group deselect
NUMBER PAD *	Invert selection
TAB	Moves focus between tabs (documents) in the active pane group
DELETE	Delete selected object
ESC	Cancel transfer
F1	Help
F2	Rename
F3	Find next
F4	Switch between Site Manager and Local Drives tabs
F5	Refresh active pane
F6	Switch to Classic/Pro mode
F8	Display folder information
F9	Cancel transfer
F10	Switch between Log Pane and Queue Pane
F11	Folder comparison options
F12	Hide or display individual log window
ALT+ENTER	Folder, file, or site properties
ALT+UP ARROW	Move to parent folder
ALT+DOWN ARROW	Select dropdown arrow for active pane
ALT+RIGHT ARROW	Show bookmark dropdown for remote pane
ALT+LEFT ARROW	Show bookmark dropdown for local pane

Key	Function
ALT+F7	Display Global Options Dialog
ALT+0	Toggle show Site Manager/Local Pane view
ALT+1	Toggle show Queue/Log Pane
ALT+2	Hide or display individual log window (same as F12)
ALT+3	Toggle show status bar
ALT+Q	Exit
CTRL + A	Select All
CTRL + B	Bold Font (when in HTML editor), Browse offline (When a site is selected in Site Manager pane)
CTRL + C	Copy
CTRL + D	Change remote folder
CTRL + E	Execute file
CTRL + F	Find
CTRL + H	Launch internal HTML editor
CTRL + I	Italic Font (when in HTML editor mode)
CTRL + J	Launch Connection wizard
CTRL + L	Filter
CTRL + M	Make new folder
CTRL + N	New FTP Connection
CTRL + O	Open (new document)
CTRL + P	Print (when in HTML editor mode)
CTRL + Q	Add current path as new bookmark
CTRL + R	Reconnect
CTRL + S	Save open document (HTML editor mode)
CTRL + U	Connect to URL or underline when HTML editor is active.
CTRL + V	Paste
CTRL + W	View file
CTRL + X	Cut
CTRL + Y	Redo (When in HTML editor mode)
CTRL + Z	Undo (When in HTML editor mode)
CTRL + F4	Close active pane
CTRL + F8	Quick Connect

Key	Function
CTRL+F9	Folder Monitor Tool
CTRL+F10	Folder Backup Tool
CTRL+F11	Folder Synchronize Tool
CTRL + ~ (TILDE)	Move focus between left, right and bottom panes
CTRL + PAGE DOWN	Download
CTRL + PAGE UP	Upload
CTRL + TAB	Move focus right to left among open connections and documents
CTRL+ENTER	Edit selected document (also creates a line-break when in the integrated editor's Find/Replace utility)
CTRL+SHIFT+A	Add anchor (when in HTML editor mode)
CTRL+SHIFT+B	Change item queue order (place at bottom)
CTRL+SHIFT+C	Add comment (when in HTML editor mode)
CTRL+SHIFT+D	Change item queue order (move down one)
CTRL+SHIFT+I	Font dialog (when in HTML editor mode), Input RAW FTP command when in CuteFTP mode
CTRL+SHIFT+L	Clear entire log
CTRL+SHIFT+T	Change item queue order (move to top)
CTRL+SHIFT+U	Change item queue order (move up one)
SHIFT+F4	Disconnect

Displaying the Site Manager

TO DISPLAY THE SITE MANAGER

1. Select **Tools > Site Manager > Display Site Manager** from the menu. A check mark appears next to the menu selection, indicating the Site Manager is visible. To hide the Site Manager again, select it from the menu.

Note:
You can use F4 on your keyboard to toggle the Site Manager on and off.

Warning:
Hiding the Site Manager in CuteFTP Professional hides the Local Drives Pane as well.

Displaying local files and folders

Local files and folders are displayed in the **Local Drive**s pane on the left-hand side of the CuteFTP window.

TO DISPLAY FILES AND FOLDERS ON THE LOCAL COMPUTER

1. From the menu, select **View > Show Panes > Local Drives & SM Pane** (there should be a check mark next to it.).
2. Select the **Local Drives** tab at the bottom of the left pane to toggle between Local Drives and the Site Manager pane.

Warning:
Hiding the Local Drives Pane hides the Site Manager as well.

Displaying transfer items

Items ready for transfer, in transit, or just transferred display in the transfer **Queue**. The Queue Pane is just above the status bar along the bottom of the CuteFTP window.

TO DISPLAY QUEUED FILES AND FOLDERS

1. Make certain there is a check mark on the **View** > **Show Panes** menu next to **Queue & Log Pane**.
2. Click the **Queue** tab at the bottom left of the lowest pane to toggle between the **Queue** and **Log** pane.

Warning:
Hiding the Queue Pane hides the Log pane too.

Displaying the connection log

Messages between the local computer and the server are stored in the **Log**. Display the **Log** by selecting its tab in the Queue & Log Pane in the bottom window.

TO DISPLAY THE CONNECTION LOG

1. From the menu, select **View > Show Panes > Queue & Log Pane** (there should be a check mark next to it.).

2. Select the **Log** tab at the bottom left of the lowest pane.

Warning:
Hiding the Queue Pane hides the Log pane too.

3. At the left end of the **Log** pane, select the plus sign next to the FTP address.
4. Select a session. The log for that session appears to the right.

Note:
The active session log displays as a small log underneath each remote pane, with additional transfer session logs shown in the lower Log pane.

Displaying folder contents

TO VIEW A LISTING OF LOCAL FOLDER CONTENTS

1. Select the **Local Drives** tab.
2. Double-click a folder to view its contents.

TO VIEW LISTINGS IN A PARENT FOLDER

1. Select in the pane where you want to view the parent folder.
2. Select the **Move up folder** button.

TO UPDATE (REFRESH) A FOLDER LISTING

1. Display the folder.
2. Select in the pane where the folder is displayed.
3. On the menu bar click **View > Refresh**.

Displaying an individual log for each connection

You can see messages between the local computer and the server appear in the **Log**. You can also see a log for each individual session in the Individual Log Pane, just above the Queue & Log Pane, and just below the Remote Pane.

TO DISPLAY A SEPARATE LOG FOR A CONNECTION

- Select **View > View Show Panes > Individual Session Logs** (there should be a check mark next to it.).

Displaying the Status Bar

You see the Status Bar at the bottom of the CuteFTP window. When you hover the mouse cursor over a tool or menu item, the left side of the Status Bar displays a brief description of the item. The right side of the Status Bar displays information about the current folder in the Remote pane.

TO SHOW/HIDE THE STATUS BAR

- From the menu, select **View > Toolbars > Status Bar**. A check mark indicates if the status bar is visible.

Displaying toolbars

CuteFTP includes four toolbars you can hide or display.

TO HIDE/SHOW THE QUICK CONNECT BAR

- From the menu select **View > Toolbars** > **Quick Connect Bar.** A check mark indicates if the status bar is visible.

You can display or hide these toolbars with the same method:

- **Standard Buttons**
- **Quick Connect Bar**
- **Custom Commands Bar**
- **HTML Editor Bar**
- **Status Bar**

Lockstep folder navigation

Lockstep folder navigation allows you to navigate simultaneously through local and remote folders that have the same structure.

TO TURN ON LOCKSTEP NAVIGATION

- In the **Local Drives** tab view of the local pane, Select the **Lockstep Folder Navigation** icon.

Note:
Lockstep navigation does not follow if you jump up or down several directory levels at once.

Setting delete prompts

You can set CuteFTP to display a pop-up box asking if you are sure you want to delete an item from the following areas:

- Local drives
- Remote sites
- The queue

TO SET CUTEFTP TO ASK BEFORE DELETING FILES FROM LOCAL DRIVES

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Display**.
3. Select **Prompts**.
4. In the right pane, select the **Confirm when deleting from local drive** check box.
5. Select **OK**.

TO SET CUTEFTP TO ASK BEFORE DELETING FILES FROM REMOTE SITES

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Display**.
3. Select **Prompts**.
4. In the right pane, select the **Confirm when deleting an item on remote view** check box.
5. Select **OK**.

TO SET CUTEFTP TO ASK BEFORE DELETING ITEMS FROM THE QUEUE

1. On the menu bar click **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Display**.
3. Select **Prompts**.
4. In the right pane, select the **Confirm when deleting an item from the queue** check box.
   - Clear the same box to stop CuteFTP from asking before a deletion.
6. Select **OK**.

TO SET CUTEFTP TO ASK BEFORE CLOSING A REMOTE PANE

1. On the menu bar click **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Display**.
3. Select **Prompts**.
4. In the right pane, select the **Confirm when closing a remote pane** check box.
5. Select **OK.**

Showing connection errors in pop-up windows

During a session, errors are displayed in the connection log to avoid cluttering the monitor and memory during unattended sessions. You can set CuteFTP to show the errors in a pop-up window when they occur.

To show connection errors in pop-up windows

1. From the menu select **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Display**.
3. Select **Prompts**.
4. In the right pane, select the **Show prompt upon error** check box.
5. Select **OK**.

Customizing toolbars

You can determine the buttons and their order in your toolbars.

TO ADD A BUTTON

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options > Display**, highlight a toolbar and select **Customize**.
2. The **Customize Toolbar** dialog box opens. There are two columns in the dialog box, **Available Toolbar buttons** and **Current Toolbar buttons**.
3. Select a button from the **Available Toolbar buttons** column.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Select **Reset** to cancel any changes.

TO REMOVE A BUTTON

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options > Display**, highlight a toolbar and select **Customize**.
2. The **Customize Toolbar** dialog box opens. There are two columns in the dialog box, they are **Available Toolbar buttons** and **Current Toolbar buttons**.

3. Select a button from the **Current Toolbar buttons** column.
4. Select **Remove**, or double-click the button.
5. Select **Reset** to cancel any changes.

TO MOVE A BUTTON

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options > Display**, highlight a toolbar and select **Customize**.
2. The **Customize Toolbar** dialog box opens. There are two columns in the dialog box, they are **Available Toolbar buttons** and **Current Toolbar buttons**.
3. Select a button from the **Current Toolbar buttons** column.
4. Select **Move Up** to move a button one icon to the left on the toolbar.
    - Select **Move Down** to move the button one icon to the right on the toolbar.
5. Select **Reset** to cancel any changes.

Note:
Reset does not cancel changes made when the Customize Toolbar dialog box was opened and closed previously.

Thumbnail views

If you are working with graphics, uploading or downloading photos, thumbnail view makes it convenient to preview the images right in CuteFTP so you can select the ones you want before you transfer them.

TO TURN ON THUMBNAIL VIEW

1. Select the pane (local or remote) that you want to change to thumbnail view.
2. From the menu, select View > View, and choose Thumbnails.

Note:
Thumbnail view supports previews of gif, jpeg and bitmaps, but not .png files.

Note:
You can adjust how CuteFTP handles thumbnail images in thumbnail cache settings in Global Options. For more information, see Thumbnail settings in Log File Settings.

Local and remote pane views

TO CHANGE THE PANE VIEW

1. Select the pane you want to change the view for.
2. From the menu, select **View > View**, and choose from:
    - Large Icons
    - Small Icons
    - List
    - Details
    - Thumbnails

Thumbnail view is useful if you are working with graphics, and need to see what a file looks like before you upload/download it.

File and folder properties

To look at the properties of a file or folder, right-click on the item and select properties.

LOCAL PANE INFORMATION

- Type: Tells you the kind of item.
- **Location**: The path the file resides at.
- **Size**: The size of the item. Note that CuteFTP also calculates the size of folders.

REMOTE PANE INFORMATION

- **Type**: Tells you the kind of item, folder, file.
- **Server**: The address of the server the file resides on.
- **Location**: The path the file resides at.
- **Size**: The size of the item. Note that CuteFTP also calculates the size of folders.
- **Modified**: When the item was last modified.
- **User**: Specifies the user of the item
- **Group**: Specifies the group the item belongs to.

- **Read/Write Permissions**: You can set the CHMOD permissions by changing the number (such as 777), or just check off the permissions in the Owner, Group, and Public area of the dialog.

5

Connecting to Sites

Connecting to a site

You can connect to any site listed in the CuteFTP Site Manager. You must be connected to the internet before you can connect to any sites. CuteFTP Professional can connect to FTP, FTPS (SSL), TLS(SSL v3), SSCN (SSL Site-to-Site transfer), SSH2(SFTP2), HTTP, and HTTPS (SSL) sites. For more on SSCN, see Site-to-site transfers.

TO CONNECT TO AN EXISTING SITE WITHIN THE SITE MANAGER

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab at the bottom of the Local Pane in CuteFTP.
2. Expand a folder from the list shown in the **Site Manager**.
3. Select a site from the list.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Connect > Connect.**

TO ADD AN FTP SITE TO THE SITE MANAGER

1. From the menu, choose **File > New > FTP Site**. The **Site Properties** window appears.
2. Type a name for the site in the **Label** field. It can be any name you choose.
3. Enter the address for the site in the **Host** field. You can enter a domain address like ftp.globalscape.com or an IP address such as 192.168.20.52. If you don't know the address your hosting provider can give it to you.
4. In the **Username** field, enter the user name given to you by your hosting provider.
5. In the **Password** field, enter the password given to you by your hosting provider.
6. Select **Connect** or **OK**. The site information is saved in the **Site Manager** for future use.

Note:
You can also type or copy and paste an FTP URL directly into CuteFTP by choosing **File > Connect > Connect to URL** from the Menu Bar.

SUPPORTED URL FORMATS

- ftp://user:pass@host.host.com:port

- ftp://user:pass@host.host.com
- ftp://user@host.host.com
- ftp://host.host.com:port
- ftp://host.host.com
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://[any of the above formats]/pathnametofile/[optional filename]
- also http, https, sftp, and ftps URLs

TIP:

Using **Paste URL**, CuteFTP either connects to the folder or downloads the file specified in the path. Here are some sample path endings and how the main program interprets them.

- "ftp://host/dir.ext/" This URL is considered a folder. CuteFTP can connect to it.
- "host/.ext/" This is considered a folder. CuteFTP can connect to it.
- "host/dir/" This is considered a folder. CuteFTP can connect to it.
- "host/dir" This is considered a folder. CuteFTP can connect to it.
- "host/dir.ext" This is considered a file. CuteFTP can download it.
- "host/.ext" This is considered a file. CuteFTP can download it.

TO CONNECT TO A URL WITH THE TRANSFER ENGINE

The **Connect to URL** feature is also supported by the Transfer Engine, and is called **Download URL**. Whether the URL specifies a path to a folder or file, the TE will try to download it.

1. Right-click the Transfer Engine icon in the system tray.
2. Choose **Download URL**.
3. Type or paste the URL in the **Download URL** box.

Using the Connection Wizard to Connect

Use the **Connection Wizard** to step through the process of connecting to a site. After using the **Connection Wizard**, your site is automatically saved to the **Site Manager**.

TO ADD A SITE THROUGH THE CONNECTION WIZARD

1. From the menu, select **File > Connect > Connection Wizard**.
2. Enter a name for your site. You can choose any name.
3. Select **Next**.
4. Enter the IP or Web address for the site. The address may look like 64.243.64.21 or ftp.example.com. You can get this address from your hosting provider.
5. Select **Next**.
6. In the **Username** field, enter the username given to you by your hosting provider.
7. In the **Password** field, enter the password given to you by your hosting provider.
8. Select **Anonymous logon** if the site does not require a password.
9. Select **Hide password** to disguise the password display as asterisks.
10. Select **Next**.
11. In the **Default Local Folder** field, browse or type the path to the local folder you want to see when connecting to this site.
12. Select **Next**.
13. Select **Finish**. CuteFTP connects to the site, and the site is saved in the **Site Manager**.

Using Quick Connect

Use the **Quick Connect toolbar** to make speedy connections to FTP sites.

TO CONNECT USING THE QUICK CONNECT TOOLBAR

1. Open CuteFTP. The **Quick Connect Bar** should display by default under the menu bar and the main toolbar.
2. If the **Quick Connect Bar** is not displayed, select **View > Toolbars > Quick Connect Bar**.
3. Type in the FTP host address in **Host**.
4. Type in your user name in the **Username** box.
5. Type in your password in the **Password** box.
6. Make sure the correct port is listed in the **Port** box (21 is the default FTP port).
7. Select **Connect** at the end of the **Port** box.

THE QUICK CONNECT TOOLBAR

The **Quick Connect** bar can be moved or undocked by clicking and dragging on the vertical bar at the left-hand edge of the bar.

Quick Connect fields

Host: The name or TCP/IP address of the FTP server. The **Host** field is also a drop-down list; by clicking on the arrow to the right of the field you can access a list of the last several sites accessed during the current session via Quick Connect.

User Name: Enter your user name or leave blank for anonymous FTP.

Password: Enter the associated password if not connecting anonymously.

Port: If you are not connecting to the default FTP port (21), enter the appropriate port here.

Quick connect buttons

Connect: Activates the connection to the site specified in the fields. You can also press the **Enter** key while the cursor is in one of the toolbar fields to connect.

Settings: Allows you to set connection options for the site.

Add to Site Manager: This button automatically creates a **Site Manager** entry for the site in the **Quick Connect** bar, so you can easily access it in the future.

Connecting to a HTTP site

You can connect to HTTP servers with CuteFTP Professional. If you have the appropriate permissions, you can browse contents, download, upload and delete files on HTTP sites.

TO CONNECT TO A HTTP SITE

1. From the menu, select **File > New > HTTP Site**. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
2. Enter an identifying name for the site in the **Label** field.
3. Enter the HTTP site's address in the **Host** address field. Prefixing the HTTP site address with http:// is not necessary.
4. If the site uses basic HTTP username/password authentication, fill in your user name and password in the appropriate fields. Notice that under the **Type** tab, the site has been automatically set up as an HTTP site.
5. If the Web site operates on a port other than 80, enter the appropriate port number in the **Port** field. Most sites connect to port 80. If the last portion of the site's URL ends in a number, that number is the port to use. For example, http://www.example.com:99 indicates that the Web server www.example.com operates on port 99. The remainder of the tabs and fields are identical to those seen when adding an FTP site.
6. Select **Connect** to establish the connection.

CuteFTP takes advantage of the keep-alive header (as defined in RFC 2068 & 2616) which keeps the session open during multiple transactions, saving the user considerable time and bandwidth.

Note:
The Web server must support basic authentication as described in RFC 1945 <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1945.html>. Because of the way authentication works, the server may challenge the client: with a WWW-Authenticate request. The client responds with: Authorization: Basic <base64 encoding of userid-password>. Most Web Servers support basic authentication but require intervention on the site operator's behalf to set it up because it is server specific. Various existing sites employ other authentication schemes, such as NTLM or those found in ASP or JavaScripts, and are not supported by CuteFTP.

Connecting to secure sites

You can make secure connections and transfers with FTPS (SSL/TLS), SFTP (SSH2), HTTPS (SSL), and standard FTP with One Time Password authentication.

TO CONNECT TO AN FTPS (SSL/TLS) SITE

1. From the menu, select **File > New > FTPS (SSL) Site**.
2. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Type in the host, user name and password.
4. Select the **Type** tab.
5. In the **Protocol** list, choose **FTP with TLS/SSL (Implicit encryption)**, or **FTP with TLS/SSL (Explicit encryption),** or **FTP with TLS/SSL (AUTH TLS - Explicit)**. The appropriate port will be selected. Certain servers support only one of the above SSL connection mechanisms.
6. Select **Connect** or **OK**.

TO CONNECT TO AN SSH2 (SFTP2) SITE

1. From the menu, select **File > New > SFTP (SSH2) Site**.
2. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Type in the host, user name and password.
4. Select **Connect** or **OK**.

TO CONNECT TO AN HTTPS SITE

1. From the menu, select **File > New > HTTPS (SSL) Site**.
2. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.

3. Type in the host, user name and password.
4. Select **Connect** or **OK**.

Staying connected to sites

You can maintain connections even when you aren't transferring files by using the Smart Keep Alive (SKA) feature. SKA sends commands at random intervals to the FTP server, which maintains an active connection.

TO TURN ON SMART KEEP ALIVE

1. From the menu choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** dialog box appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.
4. In the right pane, select the **Enable Smart Keep Alive (SKA)** check box.
5. Select **OK**.

TO TURN OFF SMART KEEP ALIVE

1. From the menu choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.
4. In the right pane, clear the **Enable Smart Keep Alive (SKA)** check box.
5. Select **OK**.

CUSTOMIZABLE SETTINGS IN SMART KEEP ALIVE (SKA)

- The time SKA waits before starting
- How long SKA will run
- When SKA commands are sent
- Which SKA commands are sent
- Automatically reconnect

TO SET THE TIME SKA WAITS BEFORE STARTING

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.

4. In the right pane, enter a value between 0 and 1000 in **Start SKA *n* seconds after the last command**. CuteFTP will begin using SKA after the specified idle time. (Default is 30 seconds)
5. Select **OK**.

TO SET HOW LONG SKA WILL RUN

1. On the menu bar, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.
4. In the right pane, enter a value between 1 and 1000 in **Maintain SKA for *n* minutes**. (Default is 30 minutes)
5. Select **OK**.

TO SET WHEN SKA COMMANDS ARE SENT

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.
4. In the right pane, enter values between 0 and 1000 in **Send command at random intervals between *n* and *n* seconds**. (Default is between 15 and 60 seconds)
5. Select **OK**.

TO SET WHICH SKA COMMANDS ARE SENT

SKA sends commands from the **Commands** list in random order.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.
4. In the right pane, click **Add** and type in another command to add a command to the list.

OR

- To remove a command, highlight a command in the list and click **Remove**.

5. Select **OK**.

TO SET CUTEFTP TO AUTOMATICALLY RECONNECT

If the server terminates the connection, CuteFTP automatically reconnects to the FTP site.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.
4. In the right pane, select **If disconnected, auto-reconnect within *n* seconds**. (Default is 10 seconds)
5. Enter a value between 1 and 1000 seconds to set how long CuteFTP waits before reconnecting.
6. Select **OK**.

Making multiple concurrent connections

You can transfer files on one site while browsing another site or browse a folder on a site while transferring files from the same site.

Multiple Concurrent Sessions are depicted as multiple open windows in the Remote Pane (on the right side by default). You can tile, cascade, or minimize these windows. When the panes are maximized, select alternate sessions by clicking the tabs at their lower left border.

TO OPEN MULTIPLE CONCURRENT CONNECTIONS

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. From the menu choose **File > Connect > Connect**.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to connect to more sites. You can connect to the same or different sites.

TO FORCE CUTEFTP TO OPEN NEW CONNECTIONS FOR MULTIPLE TRANSFERS

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Transfer**.
2. Clear the **Transfer files over the browse session** check box.

TO ALLOW MULTIPLE CONNECTIONS FROM CUTEFTP

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Connection**.
3. Enter a value between 1 and 200 in **Global Max number of connections**.

TO ALLOW MULTIPLE CONNECTIONS TO THE SAME SITE

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Connection**.
3. Enter a value between 1 and 200 in **Max number of connections per site**.

TO ENHANCE PERFORMANCE WITH LIMITED RESOURCES

- Limit the number of concurrent per site transfers allowed
- Turn off individual transfer item logging in settings or turn off all logging options in **Tools > Global Options > General > Logs**.
- Don't transfer files in Multi-Part mode
- Don't perform on-the-fly File Integrity Checking
- Close the main program interface and let the Transfer Engine perform the transfer.

PERFORMANCE LIMITATIONS

- On a Windows 95/98/ME computer you can only choose up to 40 concurrent connections.
- On a Windows NT/2k/XP computer you can choose up to 200 concurrent connections, but more than 40 connections may compromise system performance.
- Connections include transfers, browser sessions, and every single thread in a Multi-Part transfer.
- FTP sites that don't support multiple connections or sites that frequently drop the FTP connection will limit concurrent sessions.
- Machine resources and slow hardware may limit or prohibit multiple connections.

Creating and using bookmarks

You can have special entries called Bookmarks associated with sites that open a specific local or remote folder (or both).

TO CREATE A BOOKMARK

1. Select and then open the folder you want to bookmark.
2. Right-click in either the remote or local window.
3. Choose **Bookmark Current Folder** from the pop-up menu. The new bookmark appears in the **Site Manager** as a sub-listing of the remote site's entry. Bookmarks created in this manner are assigned the remote folder as their default name.

TO ACCESS A BOOKMARK

1. Double-click a bookmark in the **Site Manager** (displayed as a sub-item under the site icon).
2. A new remote window opens displaying the bookmark's remote folder if specified; otherwise the root folder displays. The **Site Manager** switches to **Local Drives**, displaying the local folder specified in the bookmark.

Or

1. Select the purple bookmark icon next to the folder path field just above the local or remote folder pane.
2. A new context window appears, displaying the available bookmarks for the current site.
3. Select the desired bookmark.

TO MODIFY A BOOKMARK

1. Select the bookmark.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. In **Remote path**, type a new path if you want to change the bookmark's remote folder.
4. In **Local path**, type a new path if you want to change the bookmark's local folder.
5. Select **OK**.

TO REMOVE A BOOKMARK

1. Select the bookmark in the **Site Manager.**
2. On the menu bar, click **File > Delete** (when using CuteFTP Professional) or click the **Delete** button (when using CuteFTP Home.)
3. Select **Yes**.

TO RENAME A BOOKMARK

1. Select the bookmark.
2. From the menu select **File > Rename**.
3. Type a new name.
4. Press the **Enter** key.

Using the ACCT command

You can establish a connection and then supply the ACCT command for servers that require it.

TO USE ACCT WITH OR WITHOUT AN FTP PROXY

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager**. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
2. Select the **Options** tab, and choose **Use site-specific option** under the **Site-specific configuration options** drop down menu.
3. Select **Proxy**. The **Proxy** dialog box appears.
4. In the **Proxy type** list, select your proxy type.
5. Select the **Use authentication** check box.

6. Type the password (for ACCT) in the **Password** field.
7. Make sure the **HOST** and **PORT** field are identical to your site's host and port as specified in the **General** and **Type** tabs.
8. Select **Advanced**. The **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog appears.
9. Select **CUSTOM**.
10. Add the following variables. Select **Enter** after each one:
    - USER %user%
    - PASS %pass%
    - ACCT %fire_pass%
11. Select **OK** to close the **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog.
12. Select **OK** again to close the **Proxy** dialog.
13. Select **Connect** or **Exit**.

TO USE ACCT WITH AN FTP PROXY

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager**. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
2. Select the **Options** tab, and choose **Use site-specific option** under the **Site-specific configuration options** drop down box.
3. Select **Proxy**. The **Proxy** window appears.
4. In the **Proxy type** list, select **FTP proxy**.
5. Select the **Use authentication** check box.
6. Type the password (for ACCT) in the **Password** field.
7. Select **Advanced**. The **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog appears.
8. Select **USER/PASS/ACCT**.
9. Select **OK** to close the **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog.
10. Select **OK** again to close the **Proxy** dialog.
11. Select **Connect** or **Exit**.

Protecting Site Manager content

TO REQUIRE A PASSWORD TO OPEN THE SITE MANAGER

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Security > Encrypt Site Manager Data**.
2. Type the same password in both the **Enter new password** and **Confirm new password** fields.
3. Select **OK**. CuteFTP will prompt for a password every time it starts.

TO CHANGE THE SITE MANAGER PASSWORD

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Security > Change Password**.

2. Type the same password in both the **Enter new password** and **Confirm new password** fields.
3. Select **OK**. CuteFTP will prompt for a password every time it starts.

TO REMOVE THE SITE MANAGER PASSWORD

- From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Security > Remove Password**. CuteFTP will no longer prompt for a password when it starts.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- When protected, the Site Manager information is protected with 64-bit Blowfish encryption.
- Create a password at least 5 characters long for maximum security.
- If you forget the password, you will not be able to use the protected **Site Manager**. You will have the option to back up the locked **Site Manager** and re-enter your site information in a new **Site Manager**.
- You can re-import the password-protected **Site Manager** file, but you still need the password to do so.

6

Secure Connections

Connecting to Secure Socket Layer (SSL and TLS) sites

To connect to an FTP site over SSL

1. From the menu, select **File > New > FTPS (SSL) Site**.
2. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Type in the **Host address**, **Username** and **Password**.
4. Select the **Type** tab.
5. In the **Protocol** list, choose the type of SSL connection mechanism supported by your server or use the default type selected.
6. Select **Connect**.

To connect to an existing site over SSL

1. Select on the site in the **Site Manager.**
2. Select **Connect**.

To speed up transfers with an SSL site

Using a clear data channel speeds up transfers with SSL sites. A clear data channel encrypts the connection process, but files are transferred without encryption.

1. Select on the site in the **Site Manager.**
2. From the menu, select **File > Properties**. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. Select the **Clear Data Channel** check box.
5. Select **OK** or **Connect**.

Note:
Not all servers support or allow the PROT C (Clear Data Channel) command argument sequence.

TO ENCRYPT THE DATA TRANSFER AND NOT THE COMMAND CONNECTION

Using a Clear Command Channel you can keep your data transfers encrypted, and still avoid firewall issues.

1. Select on the site in the **Site Manager.**
2. From the menu, select **File > Properties**. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. Select the **Clear Command Channel** check box.
5. Select **OK** or **Connect**.

Note:
Not all servers support or allow the CCC (Clear Command Channel) command argument.

TO CONFIGURE OTHER SSL SETTINGS

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSL Security**.

Creating your own SSL certificates

With CuteFTP you can create and sign digital certificates. SSL servers use certificates to determine whether or not they will allow you to connect.

TO CREATE AN SSL CERTIFICATE

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Security > SSL Security**.
3. Select **Create Certificate**.
4. Enter the **Certificate Set Name** - This is the name of the certificate generated by the **Certificate Wizard**.
5. Enter the **Output Location** - Select the folder to save the certificate in.
6. Choose a **bit-length** for the certificate private key. CuteFTP supports keys up to 4,096 bits.
7. Choose an **Expiration** date - This defines how long the certificate remains valid.
8. Enter and confirm the **Pass Phrase** - The Pass Phrase can be any combination of characters or spaces. It is used to encrypt the private key. Do not lose the pass phrase. The certificate is useless without it.

9. Select **Next**.
10. Enter the **City/Town** of your organization.
11. Enter the **State/Province** of your organization.
12. Enter the **name** of your Organization.
13. Enter the **Common Name**. Typically, this is your name or the domain name associated with your site.
14. Enter your **E-mail** address.
15. Enter the **Unit** or name of your department, such as "Information Systems."
16. Enter the two-letter **Country** code for your organization's nation.
17. Select **Next**.
18. Select the **Set up CuteFTP to use the generated certificate** check box - the wizard automatically associates the certificate to CuteFTP. It can be unassociated by clearing the **Use SSL Certificate** check box in **Tools > Global Options > Security > SSL**. If the check box is cleared, the wizard only saves the certificate files in the folder originally specified.
19. Select **Finish**.
20. CuteFTP displays the paths to all the files generated for your certificate. If you want a third party to sign your certificate, you must send the Certificate Signing Request (.csr) file to the third party.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- Not all SSL sites require certificates.
- When you create a certificate CuteFTP generates the following files:
    - **A Private key file (.key)** - The private key should never be distributed to anyone. It is used to decrypt sessions encrypted by a public key.
    - **A Certificate request file (.csr)** - This file can be signed by GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server's Certificate Signing Utility or sent to an intermediate Certificate Authority such as Verisign or Thawte for signing.
    - **A Certificate file (.crt)** - This is a signed certificate, whether self-signed or signed by an intermediate certificate authority.
- If the server accepts self-signed certificates, you can connect with the .crt file and .key file you created and associated to CuteFTP, provided the server has added your certificate to its trusted list.
- You can export certificates (.crt files) from CuteFTP's Trusted certificate store, located under **Global Options > Security, SSL Security**.

Having an SSL certificate signed

TO HAVE A CERTIFICATE SIGNED

1. Create a certificate. CuteFTP generates the necessary files, including a Certificate Signing Request (.csr) file.
2. Send the .csr file to the server or a Certificate Authority (CA) such as Verisign (www.verisign.com) or Thawte (www.thawte.com).
3. The server or CA uses your .csr file to create a **signed** certificate (.crt) file, which it should then send to you.
4. Replace your existing .crt file with the signed one.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

When you create a certificate CuteFTP generates the following files:

- **A Private key file (.key)** - The private key should never be distributed to anyone. It is used to decrypt sessions encrypted by a public key.
- **A Certificate request file (.csr)** - This file can be signed by GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server's Certificate Signing Utility or sent to an intermediate Certificate Authority such as Verisign or Thawte for signing.
- **A Certificate file (.crt)** - This is a signed certificate, whether self-signed or signed by an intermediate certificate authority.

Choosing a certificate for SSL sessions

Choose the certificate CuteFTP will send to SSL servers.

TO CHOOSE A CERTIFICATE

1. From the menu select **Tools > Global Options**.
2. If you don't see **SSL security** click on the plus sign to expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSL security**.
4. Select **Use SSL Certificate when authenticating**.
5. Select the appropriate files using the Browse buttons next to **Certificate** and **Private Key**.
6. Enter the passphrase in the **Passphrase** and **Confirm passphrase** boxes.
7. Select **Apply** and **OK**.

Accepting server SSL certificates

Accepting a certificate from a server allows you to connect with the server. Once you accept a certificate it is added to your **Trusted Certificates** list, and you will not be asked to accept or reject the certificate again. If you reject a certificate, and try to connect again, you will be asked again to accept the certificate.

TO ACCEPT A SERVER'S SSL CERTIFICATE

1. Connect to a server with SSL.
2. If the server has a certificate, it displays.
3. Select **Accept**. The certificate isadded to your **Trusted Certificates** List.

Note:
If you click Reject, you will not be able to connect to the server.

TO SEE YOUR TRUSTED CERTIFICATES

1. From the menu bar, choose **Tools > Global Options > Security > SSL security**.
2. Select **Trusted Certificate**.
3. Highlight a certificate in the list.
4. Select **Properties** to see more detailed information about the certificate.

Importing or removing SSL certificates from the trusted list

When a certificate is in your trusted list, you will be able to connect to any server presenting that certificate.

TO IMPORT A CERTIFICATE TO THE CUTEFTP TRUSTED LIST

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Security > SSL security**.
2. Select **Trusted Certificate**.
3. Select **Import**.
4. In the **Files of Type** field, select **Certificates (*.pem, *pfx, *.crt)** or **All files (*.*)**.
5. Navigate to the folder containing the certificate file.
6. Highlight the certificate file.
7. Select **Open**. The certificate is now listed in your **Trusted Certificates** list.
8. Select **Close**.

TO REMOVE AN SSL CERTIFICATE FROM THE TRUSTED LIST

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Security > SSL security**.

2. Select **Trusted Certificates.**
3. Highlight the certificate you want to remove.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. Select **Close** to close the **Certificate Manager** dialog.
6. Select **OK** to close the **Global Options** dialog.

Using a clear data channel with SSL

Using CDC (Clear Data Channel) speeds up transfers with SSL sites. A clear data channel encrypts the connection process, but files are transferred without encryption. You can add more speed to your transfers by using a clear command channel as well.

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager.**
2. From the menu choose **File > Properties**. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. In the **Protocol** list, select **FTP with SSL (Implicit encryption)**, or **FTP with SSL (Explicit encryption)** or **FTP with SSL/TLS (AUTH TLS)**.
5. Select the **Clear Data channel** check box.
6. Select **OK** or **Connect**.

Note:
The **Clear Data channel** option is only available with SSL connections.

Using a clear command channel with SSL

Using CCC (Clear Command Channel), your connection process and login are encrypted, but when you begin transferring data, all FTP commands are sent in clear text. The data transfers remain encrypted, unless you choose to use a clear data channel. SSL connections require CCC when connecting in PORT mode from behind a NAT firewall.

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager.**
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Type** tab.
4. In the **Protocol** list, select **FTP with SSL (Implicit encryption)**, or **FTP with SSL (Explicit encryption)** or **FTP with SSL/TLS (AUTH TLS)**.
5. Select the **Clear Command channel** check box.
6. Select **OK** or **Connect**.

Note:
The **Clear Command channel** option is only available with SSL connections.

Learning about SSL

When you use CuteFTP to connect securely to a server that supports SSL or TLS, the two machines pass a sequence of commands to create a secure connection. The FTP protocol definition provides at least two distinct mechanisms by which this sequence is initiated: Explicit (active) and Implicit (passive) security.

EXPLICIT SECURITY

Explicit security requires that the FTP client issue a specific command to the FTP server after establishing a connection to establish the SSL link. The default FTP server port is used. This formal method is documented in RFC 2228.

IMPLICIT SECURITY

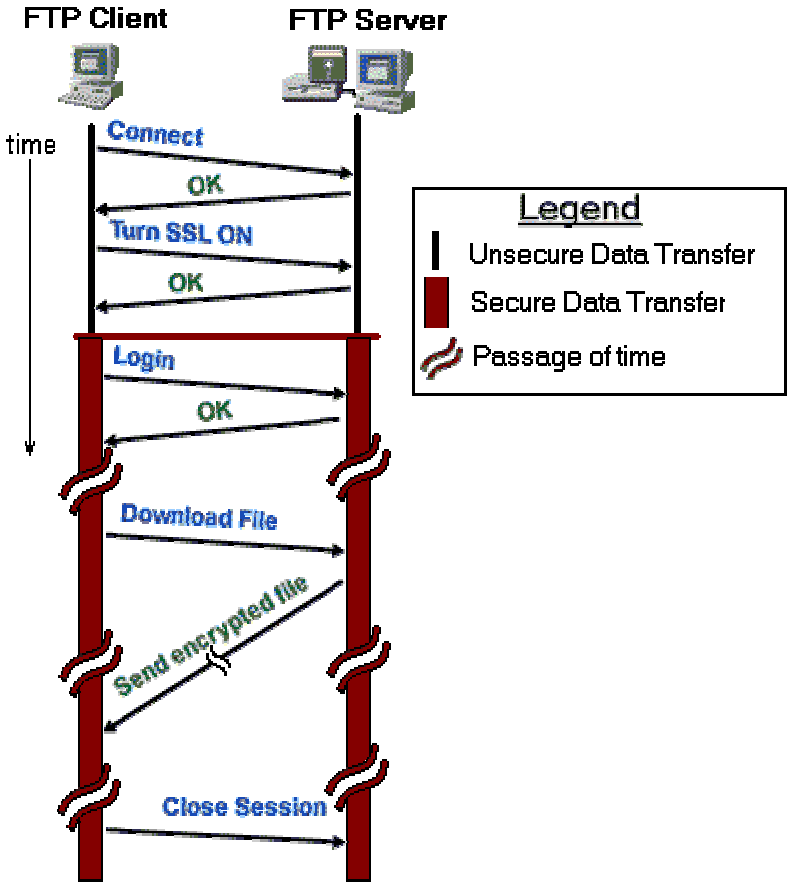
Implicit security is a mechanism by which security is automatically turned on as soon as the FTP client makes a connection to an FTP server. In this case, the FTP server defines a specific port for the client (990) to be used for secure connections.

Note:
Implicit SSL is discussed in various SSL drafts but not formally adopted in an RFC. For strict compliance to standards, use the explicit method. Implicit SSL adds benefits in the form of a dedicated port strictly used for secure connections, requiring less overhead in establishing the session. There are various FTP servers that support this mode, including GlobalSCAPE's Secure FTP Server. For more on SSL Connection Mechanisms, see Troubleshooting SSL Connections.

SSL SESSIONS

The diagram below shows a SSL session using explicit security. In this picture, the two machines communicate over an Internet connection. Time is represented vertically—the first communication at the top of the timeline is from the Client to the Server, and subsequent communications proceed chronologically down the timeline. The breaks in the timeline represent the passage of time.

EXPLICIT SSL CONNECTION



CuteFTP adheres to Internet standards for secure transfer of files over the FTP protocol. Specifically, CuteFTP implements the FTP extensions documented in RFC 2228. Any FTP Server that also implements these extensions will work with CuteFTP in order to ensure the encryption of your sensitive data.

GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Servers and Enhanced File Transfer Servers are also capable of Implicit SSL sessions over a dedicated port. See the *Secure FTP Server User's Guide* and *Enhanced File Transfer Server User's Guide* for more information on configuring a secure session to a GlobalSCAPE Secure Server.

Secure site-to-site transfers using SSCN

CuteFTP supports secure (SSL) site to site transfers using a proprietary command developed by Raiden FTP Server and supported by GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server and a few others.

TO TRANSFER FILES FROM ONE SERVER TO ANOTHER SECURELY

1. Connect to each site (source and destination).

2. From the menu, choose **Window > Tile**.
3. Drag the file from one Remote Pane to another. The **Queue pane** displays a double arrow (<->) to indicate a site-to-site transfer.

Note:
Both sites must support and enable SSCN (Set Secured Client Negotiation). As of March 2004, the following servers are the only ones to support this command: GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server, SurgeFTP Server, Raiden FTPD, Blackmoon FTP Server, Titan FTP Server, and Orenosv HTTP/FTP Server.

Troubleshooting SSL Connections

If you are having difficulty connecting to your FTP server over SSL, refer to the following checklist for help.

SSL Connection Checklist

1. Verify that the server you are connecting to supports SSL connections.
2. Verify the port being used. Some servers require that SSL connections use a dedicated port, such as 990.
3. Verify the SSL connection type selected under **Site Properties > Type > Protocol Type** is the correct SSL mechanism supported by your server. See **SSL Compatibility Issues** further below.
4. Verify that your **Certificate** was added to the server's **Trusted List** if the server requires client certificates upon connect. You may have to notify the server administrator as not all servers will auto-accept client certificates upon their first connection attempt.
5. You must accept the server's certificate when prompted during a connection attempt, otherwise the client will not connect as desired.
6. Verify that your certificate hasn't expired. Check your Trusted List.
7. Copy the connection log to a text file or e-mail to assist in troubleshooting when contacting your FTP or Web service provider or the GlobalSCAPE support team.

SSL Connection Mechanisms

Not all FTP servers that support SSL connections do so correctly or in strict compliance to proposed or approved standards.

Various FTP over SSL implementations have been proposed over the last few years. Most do not conform with RFC–2228 or are at odds with the latest IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) drafts. Typical Implementations include:

Implicit TLS/SSL

SSL connection over a dedicated port (990) registered with the IANA. This approach, while quite common, is not favored by the IETF. CuteFTP supports this implementation for broader compatibility.

Explicit "AUTH SSL"

SSL connection over a standard port (21) using "AUTH SSL" or "AUTH TLS-P" to negotiate the protection mechanism. AUTH TLS-P implicitly sets the protection mechanism and is therefore in direct disagreement with RFC 2228. CuteFTP does support AUTH SSL, and subsequently sets the protection mechanism explicitly using the PROT command and its approved arguments.

Explicit "AUTH TLS"

SSL v3.1 connection over a standard port (21) and explicitly setting the protection mechanism. This is the version that best adheres to RFC 2228 and is favored by the IETF in its latest FTP over SSL draft (draft-murray-auth-ftp-tls-13.txt). This version is supported by CuteFTP and is selected by default when establish a new SSL connection.

Apart from those mentioned above, CuteFTP will not connect to servers requiring "AUTH TLS-P" or other deprecated SSL connection mechanisms.

Connecting to HTTPS sites

HTTPS sites use SSL to secure HTTP connections.

TO CONNECT TO AN HTTPS SITE

1. From the menu, choose **File > New > HTTPS (SSL) Site**.
2. Enter a name for the site in the **Label** field.
3. Enter a site's address in the **Host address** field. You do not need to prefix the site address with `https://`.
4. Enter your user name in the **Username** field. The HTTPS server administrator provides the username and password.
5. Enter your password in the **Password** field.
6. Select **Connect**.
7. When you connect for the first time, the **Accept Certificate** dialog box displays.
8. Select **Accept** if you trust the certificate. Rejecting a certificate will abort the connection.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- HTTPS sites rely on the use of certificates to verify that you are in fact communicating with the desired HTTPS server and to establish the secure connection.

- Accepting a certificate stores the certificate on your computer so you do not have to verify it again the next time you connect to the site.
- If a site's certificate appears unusual, has not been signed by a third party (such as VeriSign, or Thawte) or does not match the operator's name, it is suggested you reject the request.
- Once the connection is established, a small lock icon displays on CuteFTP's status bar. Double-clicking the icon in the status bar displays the server's certificate.
- The lock icon represents the type of connection established, but does not guarantee a secured connection. Even though you are connected to an https site, you may be linked to an unsecured directory, at which time the session is no longer be https, but http instead. Check the log if you are unsure of the security of your connection.

Connecting to Secure Shell (SSH2) sites

TO CONNECT TO AN SSH2 SITE

1. From the menu, choose **File > New > SFTP (SSH2) Site**.
2. Enter a name for the site in the **Label** field.
3. Enter the site address in the **Host** field. You do not need to enter "ftp://" or "sftp://" at the start of the address.
4. Enter your user name in the **User Name** field. The server administrator provides your username and password.
5. Enter your password in the **Password** field.
6. Select **Connect**.

TO CHOOSE SSH2 CIPHERS AND AUTHENTICATION METHODS

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select on **SSH2 security** and make any changes.
4. **Select OK**.

Authenticating in SSH2

You can use Password, Public Key, or both authentication methods for SSH2 connections. Password authentication is the default.

TO USE PASSWORD AUTHENTICATION

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2 security**.

4. Make sure the **Use password authentication** check box is selected. You are using password authentication whenever the check box is selected, even if the box and check are dimmed.
5. Select **OK**.

Note:
Password authentication uses the FTP site login password for authentication, not the passphrase used to decrypt the identity file's private key shown in the field beneath the **Use password authentication** check box.

TO USE PUBLIC KEY AUTHENTICATION

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2**.
4. Select the **Use public key authentication** check box. You are using public key authentication whenever the check box is selected, even if the box and check are dimmed.
5. Select **OK**.

Note:
To use public key authentication, you will need to send your public key to the server administrator before making an SSH2 connection. If the server is running OpenSSH, you will need to convert the public key as described below:

6. Create an identity file in the client.
7. Send the public key (Identity.pub) to the server administrator (via FTP, e-mail, etc.)
8. The server administrator *must* convert the public key to OpenSSH, check it with *wordcount*, and add it to *authorized_keys*.

Command sequence:

```
ssh-keygen -i -f Identity.pub > sshpub
wc sshpub
cat sshpub > ~\.ssh\authorized_keys
```

Note:
Wordcount should return a "1" as the first number. OpenSSH asks for the identity files password the first time you log in. If CuteFTP fails to connect, contact our support team and provide the kernel version,

OpenSSH build, and the CuteFTP build number (located under **Help > About**).

Creating SSH2 key pairs

TO CREATE YOUR OWN PRIVATE AND PUBLIC KEY FOR SSH2 CONNECTIONS

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Security > SSH2 Security** and click on the **Create identity file** button.
2. Choose an **RSA** or **DSA Key Type**.
3. Select **Next**.
4. Enter the same passphrase in the **Passphrase** and **Confirm Passphrase** boxes. The passphrase can be any combination of characters and spaces.
5. Select **Next**.
6. In the **Private key filename** box, type or click the browse button to select a path where you want to store your private key.
7. Type a name for the key at the end of the path.
8. In the **Public key filename** box, enter the path where you want to store your public key. Make sure the filename extension is .pub and the file name matches.
9. Choose a **Key length** between 1024 and 4096 bits. Shorter keys are faster but less secure; longer keys are more secure but slow connections.
10. Select **Finish**. CuteFTP generates the keys. Longer keys take more time to generate.
11. CuteFTP displays the path and name of the keys. If you want CuteFTP to use the keys just generated, select **Yes**.
12. Select **OK**.

Note:
For added security, clear the **Passphrase** and **Confirm passphrase** fields in the **SSH2 Security page**. CuteFTP then **prompts** for the identity file's secret key passphrase when required for connection to a SFTP site.

Note:
CuteFTP only supports two algorithms for SSH2 keys ssh-dss (DSA) and ssh-rsa (RSA). A DSA key is required for SSH2, an RSA key is recommended.

Learning About SSH2

When you connect with SSH2 there are two components or layers involved: the Transport and Authentication layers.

TRANSPORT LAYER

When you first attempt to connect to an SSH2 site, CuteFTP Professional and the server determine whether the transmission should be encrypted or clear, compressed or uncompressed, what Method Authentication Code (MAC) to use, and what kind of encryption (cipher) to use.

Once the encryption method is chosen the following happens:

1. The server sends a public key to CuteFTP.
2. CuteFTP generates a session key, and encrypts it with the server's public key.
3. CuteFTP then sends the encrypted session key back to server.
4. The server then decrypts the session key with its private key and from that time all transmitted data is encrypted with the session key.

AUTHENTICATION LAYER

After the Transport Layer is established, the server attempts to authenticate the client.

Common methods for establishing user authentication include:

- Public Key Authentication Method: publickey
    - To use this method, you will need your private key and your public key, which is passed to the server. The server encrypts a random number with your public key and sends it to you.
        2. If you have not already entered your passphrase in SSH2 security settings, CuteFTP asks you for your passphrase to activate the private key.
        3. The private key decrypts the number and sends it back to the server.
        4. The server recognizes the number as correct and allows the connection.
- Password Authentication Method: password
    - Using this method, the client sends its password to server. The client does not need to explicitly encrypt the password, because it is automatically encrypted by the SSH2 Transport Layer. This is the default in CuteFTP. With this type of authentication, the connection will fail if the Transport Layer cannot encrypt the data.

After the encryption method is established and authentication is complete, the two systems are ready to exchange secure data. CuteFTP Professional sends a secured FTP connection along the encrypted data tunnel, the remote system and responds and you can begin transferring files securely.

TRANSPORT LAYER SETTINGS

To select Message Authentication Codes (MAC)

Message Authentication Codes are algorithms used to confirm data has not been altered between the client and server.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.

2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2 Security**.
4. Select at least one Message Authentication Code from the **MAC** list. There are four to choose from:
   - MD5
   - SHA1
   - SHA1-96
   - MD5-96
5. Select **OK**. CuteFTP tries each selected MAC with the server starting with the top method in the **MAC** list.

TO SELECT ENCRYPTION METHODS (CIPHERS)

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2 Security**.
4. Select at least one encryption method from the **Cipher** list. There are five available encryption types:
   - ARCFOUR
   - Cast128
   - Triple DES (3DES)
   - Twofish
   - Blowfish
5. Select **OK**. CuteFTP Professional tries each selected encryption method with the server starting with the top method in the **Cipher** list.

AVAILABLE ENCRYPTION ALGORITHMS

ARCFOUR: Arcfour is intended to be compatible with the RC4 cipher trademarked by RSA Data Security, makers of the famous PGP program. It uses a 128-bit key and provides good security.

CAST128: This cipher is the CAST-128 cipher in CBC mode, with 128 bit keys.

Triple DES (3DES): This algorithm uses a 24-bit "triple key" to encrypt data 3 times. The 24-bit key is split into 3 8-bit segments and each is used for encryption. Triple DES is fast, but not as strong as the other algorithms.

Blowfish: The Blowfish algorithm is a public-domain method using a 128-bit key. Blowfish was intended to be a replacement for 3DES. It provides good security.

Twofish: Twofish is an improved version of Blowfish using a 256-bit key. It provides the strongest security available in CuteFTP Professional and should protect your data in most transfers.

AUTHENTICATION LAYER SETTINGS

To use public key authentication

If you want to use public key authentication, you will need to send your public key to the server administrator before you will be able to make an SSH2 connection.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2 Security**.
4. Select the **Use public key authentication** check box. You are using public key authentication whenever the check box is selected, even if the box and check are dimmed.
5. Select **OK**.

TO USE PASSWORD AUTHENTICATION

1. From the menu choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2 Security**.
4. Select the **Use password authentication** check box. You are using password authentication whenever the check box is selected, even if the box and check are dimmed.
5. Select **OK**.

Note:
You have to use at least one authentication method for an SSH2 connection. You can use both methods for the same SSH2 connection.

Using SSH2 key pairs

You can authenticate SSH2 connections with a certificate (public key) just like SSL.

TO USE PUBLIC KEY AUTHENTICATION IN SSH2

1. Create an SSH2 key pair.
2. Send the Public key to the SSH2 server administrator.
3. On the menu bar click **Tools > Global Options**.
4. In the left pane, expand **Security**.
5. Select **SSH2 Security**.
6. In the right pane, select the **Use public key authentication** check box.
7. Type the path or browse to your public and private keys in the **Public key path** and **Private key path** boxes.
8. In the **Use Passphrase** box, enter your passphrase for the key.

9. In the **Confirm passphrase** box, enter your passphrase again.
10. Select **OK**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

Your private key and passphrase are never transmitted over a connection. When the server attempts to authenticate:

1. The server encrypts a random number with your public key and sends it to you.
2. If you have not entered your passphrase in SSH2 security settings, CuteFTP asks you for your passphrase to activate the private key.
3. The private key decrypts the number and sends it back to the server.
4. The server recognizes the number as correct and allows the connection.

Public key authentication

To use public key authentication, you must send your public key to the server administrator before making an SSH2 connection. If the server is running OpenSSH, you must convert the public key as described below:

1. Create an identity file in the client.
2. Send the public key (Identity.pub) to the server administrator (via FTP, e-mail, etc.)
3. The server administrator must convert the public key to OpenSSH, check it with *wordcount*, and add it to *authorized_keys*.

Command sequence:

```
ssh-keygen -i -f Identity.pub > sshpub
wc sshpub
cat sshpub > ~\.ssh\authorized_keys
```

Note:
Wordcount should return a "1" as the first number. OpenSSH asks for the identity files password the first time you log in. If CuteFTP fails to connect, contact our support team and provide the kernel version, OpenSSH build, and the CuteFTP Professional build number (located under Help > About).

Troubleshooting SFTP Connections

If you are having difficulty connecting to your SFTP server:

1. Verify that the server you are connecting to supports **SFTP connections**.

Note:
CuteFTP Professional supports SFTP, a secure service provided by the SSH2 host in which the server both encrypts the data and handles the file

transfer. This should not be confused with FTP over SSH2, in which SSH2 uses port forwarding capabilities to forward standard FTP transactions through an encrypted tunnel but the actual file is transferred by a separate, non-secure FTP server. If you are unsure if the host is supporting SFTP, check the connection port. SFTP usually occurs over **port 22**.

2. Try toggling the **compression** options in the **SSH2 Security** page
3. Verify the authentication mechanism supported and required by the server. It may require **password**, **public key** (identity file), or **both (see Important note below)**.
4. If public key authentication is required, be sure to provide a copy of the public key you created to the server's administrator, as it must be in the server's **trusted list** in order for you to connect.
5. If the server administrator created a public key for you, be sure to replace your existing one with it and select the provided key from within the **SSH2 Security** page.
6. Copy the connection log to a text file or e-mail to assist in troubleshooting when contacting your FTP or Web service provider or the GlobalSCAPE support team.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

To use public key authentication, you will must send your public key to the server administrator before making an SSH2 connection. If the server is running OpenSSH, convert the public key:

1. Create an identity file in the client.
2. Send the public key (Identity.pub) to the server administrator (via FTP, e-mail, etc.)
3. The server administrator *must* convert the public key to OpenSSH, check it with *wordcount*, and add it to *authorized_keys*.

Command sequence:

```
ssh-keygen -i -f Identity.pub > sshpub
wc sshpub
cat sshpub > ~\.ssh\authorized_keys
```

Note:
Wordcount should return a "1" as the first number. OpenSSH asks for the identity files password the first time you log in. If CuteFTP Professional fails to connect, contact our support team and provide the kernel version, OpenSSH build, and the CuteFTP Professional build number (located under Help > About).

Encrypt passwords using OTP

When you connect to a site you can encrypt your password to protect it from interception using the One Time Password (OTP) scheme. OTP is supported by GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server, various *nix servers, and a few Windows' based servers as well.

TO ENABLE OTP FOR A STANDARD FTP SITE

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. Highlight a site.
3. From the menu, select **File > Properties**.
4. Select the **Type** tab
5. In **Protocol type**, make sure **FTP (standard File Transfer Protocol)** is selected.
6. Select an encryption method in the **Password Protection** group. Choose from:
   - **Not Encrypted**
   - **MD4**
   - **MD5**
   - **Auto detect OTP**
7. Select **Connect** or **OK**.

TO ENABLE OTP FOR AN FTP OVER SSL SITE

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. Highlight a site.
3. From the menu, select **File > Properties**.
4. Select the **Type** tab
5. In **Protocol type**, make sure **FTP (standard File Transfer Protocol)** is selected.
6. Select an encryption method in the **Password Protection** group. Choose from:
   - **Not Encrypted**
   - **MD4**
   - **MD5**
   - **Auto detect OTP**
7. In **Protocol type**, select the desired **SSL connection mechanism**.
8. Select **Connect** or **OK**.

Note:
Using OTP with SSL adds a redundant layer of protection as SSL authentication already protects the password using a robust encryption mechanism.

Note:
OTP is defined in RFC 1938 (replaced by 2289) and was evolved from S/KEY™, a One-Time Password System originally developed by Bellcore.

ENCRYPTION OPTIONS

Not Encrypted - the password is sent unprotected to the server.
MD4 (S/Key) - A system that encrypts your password a different way every time it is sent.
MD5 (S/Key) - The same system as MD4, with more complex encryption scheme.
Auto detect OTP - CuteFTP tries to detect the encryption method the server uses.

Protecting Site Manager content

TO REQUIRE A PASSWORD TO OPEN THE SITE MANAGER

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Security > Encrypt Site Manager Data**.
2. Type the same password in both the **Enter new password** and **Confirm new password** fields.
3. Select **OK**. CuteFTP will prompt for a password every time it starts.

TO CHANGE THE SITE MANAGER PASSWORD

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Security > Change Password**.
2. Type the same password in both the **Enter new password** and **Confirm new password** fields.
3. Select **OK**. CuteFTP will prompt for a password every time it starts.

TO REMOVE THE SITE MANAGER PASSWORD

- From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Security > Remove Password**. CuteFTP will no longer prompt for a password when it starts.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- When protected, the Site Manager information is protected with 64-bit Blowfish encryption.
- Create a password at least 5 characters long for maximum security.
- If you forget the password, you will not be able to use the protected **Site Manager**. You will have the option to back up the locked **Site Manager** and re-enter your site information in a new **Site Manager**.
- You can re-import the password-protected **Site Manager** file, but you still need the password to do so.

7

Storing and Modifying Sites

Adding a site to the Site Manager

You can save connection settings for sites that you use often by adding them to the Site Manager.

TO ADD A SITE TO THE SITE MANAGER

1. From the menu, select **File > New** and select the type of site you want to add.
2. Select the protocol you want the site to have. The **Site Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Enter a name for the site in the **Label** field.
4. Enter the address for the site in the **Host address** field. It can be a domain name such as ftp.example.com, or an IP address. If you don't know the address, your hosting provider can give it to you.
5. In the **Username** field, enter the username given to you by your hosting provider.
6. In the **Password** field, enter the password given to you by your hosting provider.
7. Select **Connect** or **OK**. The site information is saved in the **Site Manager**.

Note:
Your host address can be in IP form (like 255.255.255.255) or in domain name form (like ftp.mysite.com)

Importing and exporting sites in the Site Manager

You can add sites to your Site Manager from simple text listings or from site listings in the following FTP clients:

- BlueZone 1.01-2.11
- CoffeeCup 4.0-4.5
- Crystal FTP 2000
- CuteFTP 1.3 - 7.0
- CuteFTP Pro 1.0 - 7.0
- FTP Commander 4.0
- FTP Explorer 1.00

- FTP Voyager 6.0-8.0
- LapLink 2.0
- LeapFTP 2.7.0
- TransSoft 4.4
- WS_FTP 5.0 - 7.0

TO ADD SITE LISTINGS TO YOUR SITE MANAGER

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Import FTP Sites**.
2. Select your old FTP client from the **Import from** list.
3. Type the path or browse to your old client site list.
4. Select **Merge site entries into the existing Site Manager**.
5. Choose **Start Conversion**.

TO REPLACE YOUR SITE MANAGER LISTINGS WITH AN IMPORTED LIST

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Import FTP Sites**.
2. Select your old FTP client from the **Import from** list.
3. Type the path or browse to your old client site list.
4. Type a path or browse to a folder where you will save the new Site Manager list.

Warning:
Do not save the new database in the CuteFTP program folder or the CuteFTP Application Data folder until step 10.

5. Select **Create a new Site Manager with these entries**.
6. From the menu **Start Conversion**.
7. Exit CuteFTP and open Windows Explorer.
8. Navigate to your user profile folder.
   Example: `WDocuments and Settings\jsmith\Application Data\Globalscape\CuteFTP Professional.`
9. Give your current Site Manager file (**sm.dat**) another name, like **sm.bak** or **sm.old**.
10. Move the database you created in step five to the CuteFTP directory and rename it **sm.dat**.
11. Restart CuteFTP and begin using your new **Site Manager** database.

Warning:
Do not manually overwrite CuteFTP's sm.dat file while CuteFTP is running. CuteFTP automatically saves the sm.dat file upon exit. This means that if you replace the sm.dat file while running, CuteFTP will replace it again when you exit, resulting in the loss of your replacement file.

TO EXPORT YOUR SITE MANAGER LISTINGS

You can also export your Site Manager listings as a text file in two different formats. You may export the listings as URLs only, or as a more detailed listing of hostnames, directories and descriptions.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Site Manager > Export Sites as URL** to generate a list of sites as Web addresses. Choose **Tools > Site Manager > Export Sites as Text** to generate a list of sites in plain text.
2. Enter a name and choose a location for your exported listings in the **Save As** dialog box that appears.
3. Select **Save**.

Modifying a site in the Site Manager

You can change a number of connection settings for individual sites in the Site Manager. The changes made only affects the individual site.

TO CHANGE SITE PROPERTIES OR SETTINGS

1. Select the site you want to change in the **Site Manager**.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. Select the **General**, **Type**, **Actions**, or **Options** tab.
4. Make any desired changes.
5. Select **Connect** or **OK** to save the changes.

OR

- Select **Cancel** to reject the changes.

General site properties

The following settings are made from the **General** tab of the Site Properties dialog:

LABEL

Type the name for the site as it will appear in your **Site Manager**. This can be any name you like.

HOST ADDRESS

Enter the address for the site. It can be a domain name such as ftp.example.com, or an IP address. If you don't know the address your hosting provider or system administrator should be able to provide it for you.

USERNAME

Enter the username given to you by your hosting provider.

PASSWORD

Enter the password given to you by your hosting provider.

COMMENTS

Enter any notes about the site that you want to save with the site.

LOGIN METHOD

- Select **Normal** if the server requires your user name and password for a connection.
- Select **Anonymous** if the server doesn't require a user name and password for a connection.
- Select **Double** if you need to supply your user name and password twice for a connection.

BUTTONS

New

Saves all of your changes for the current site, and opens a new blank site.

Rename

Change the name of the site highlighted in the left pane.

Delete

Deletes the selected site. The site and all related information are removed from the Site Manager.

Browse Offline

Opens a cached version of the site's folders in the Remote pane.

Help

Opens help for Site Properties.

Connect

Saves site changes and connects to the site.

Exit

Saves changes and closes the **Site Properties** dialog box.

Site Properties Type

The following settings are made from the **Type** tab of the Site Properties dialog:

PROTOCOL TYPE

Choose the transfer protocol for the site. You can choose FTP and various SSL options. In CuteFTP Professional you can also choose HTTP, HTTP with SSL, or SSH2 (SFTP).

If you choose any of the SSL options, you will also be able to choose a Clear Data Channel or a Clear Command Channel.

PORT

CuteFTP chooses the appropriate default port for the protocol you choose. You can change this number if the default is not correct for your site.

SERVER TYPE

You can leave this at Auto-detect, and CuteFTP will try to determine what kind of server is at the site. If you have connection problems, or you know what kind of server is at the site, you can choose from the list which includes Unix, Unix compatible, Windows NT, and many others.

DATA CONNECTION TYPE

Set to **Use global settings**, CuteFTP uses the connection type set in **Global Options > Transfer.** You can also specify from PORT, PASV, EPRT, or EPSV connection mode. For more information, see Data_mode in Transfer Settings.

TRANSFER TYPE

Choose to use the transfer type you set in Global Options or one of the following:

- **Auto-detect** Based on the file type CuteFTP will decide whether to transfer in ASCII or binary.
- **ASCII** Used primarily for transfers of text based files like HTML, text and other documents.
- **Binary** Used primarily for data type transfers like pictures and other graphics, or files that do not have line feeds (carriage returns).

SERVER TIME ZONE

Choose **No Offset** if the server is in your same time zone. If the server is in a different time zone, choose it here. These time zones do not account for Daylight Saving Time. To account for Daylight Saving Time, choose a time zone one hour ahead of the server's time zone. For example, if you are connecting to a server in Central Daylight time, set the time zone to Eastern Standard time.

PASSWORD PROTECTION

Offers four options for password encryption if simple FTP is selected as the protocol type.

Site Properties Actions

The following settings are made from the **Actions** tab of the Site Properties dialog:

When client connects, switch to this remote folder

Type the full path to any folder on the remote site, and CuteFTP will automatically open the folder in the Remote Pane when you connect to the site.

When client connects, switch to this local folder

Type or browse to the full path for any folder on your machine, and CuteFTP will automatically open the folder in the Local Pane when you connect to the site.

For navigation use the following caching options

Caching means CuteFTP stores the site list information on your computer, so when you navigate to different files and folders, you don't have to reconnect.

- **Use cache during session**
  Store the site's information only until you close the connection.
- **Always use cache**
  Store the site's information and keep it even after you disconnect.
- **Do not use cache**
  Never store the site's information.

When uploading, apply this rule to files and folder names

Use this to change file names to upper case, lower case, or to keep the case the same.

- **Preserve case**
  Keep all uploaded file names in their original case.
- **Force lower case**
  Change all uploaded file names to small letters.
- **Force upper case**

Change all uploaded file names to all capitals.

Filter

Click this button to define which files will be hidden or displayed on the site.

For more information go to Choosing which files and folders to display.

Site Properties Options

The following settings are made from the **Options** tab of the Site Properties dialog:

Site specific configuration options

- Choose **Use global settings for all options** and the site will use the parameters set in **Global Options**
- Choose **Use site specific option** and the site will use the parameters set on this tab.

Apply auto-rename scheme to transfer

- Select this check box and files you transfer will be renamed according to the settings you chose in the **Global Options Rename Rules** window.
- Clear this check box and no files will be renamed when you make transfers with this site.

Use NLST instead of LIST (retrieves an abbreviated listing)

- Select this check box to get only a list of file names and no other file information from the site.
- Clear this check box and the site will send you complete file listings, including file size, file modified date, and folder names.

Use the logical parent (not physical parent) on CDUP

- Select this check box to and when you click the button to go back to the previous directory, you will go back to the previous directory, even if you clicked a link or shortcut to from the previous directory.
- Clear this check box and when you click the button to go back to the previous directory, you will go back to the actual parent directory for this folder, which might not have been the directory you were in when you jumped to the current directory.

Site Specific Firewall settings

- Click **Proxy** if you need to connect through a proxy server to get to this site. A **Proxy** window will appear where you can enter the proxy type, server address, username and password.

- Click **Socks** if you need to connect through a Socks server to get to this site. A **Socks** window will appear where you can enter the SOCKS type, server address, username and password.

Retry attempts

Enter the number of times you want CuteFTP to try connecting to this site, if there is a problem making a connection.

Delay between retries

Enter how many seconds you want CuteFTP to wait before retrying a connection after a connection attempt fails.

Max connections per this site

Enter how many connections CuteFTP can open to the site for transferring many files simultaneously.

Correcting times for sites in different time zones

TO COMPENSATE FOR SERVERS IN DIFFERENT TIME ZONES

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager**.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. Select the server's time zone from the **Server time zone** list.
5. Choose **Connect** or **OK**.

Note:
CuteFTP uses time zone offset information for display, transfer, and overwrite logic purposes.

Designating a site's server type

You can improve compatibility with individual sites by designating the type of server used for that site.

TO DESIGNATE SERVER TYPE

1. Select a site from the **Site Manager**.
2. From the menu choose **File > Properties**.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. In the **Server Type** list, select a server type.
5. Select **Connect** or **OK**.

Removing a site from the Site Manager

1. Select the site you want to delete in the **Site Manager**.
2. Select **Delete**. A message appears asking if you are sure you want to delete the site.
3. Select **Yes**.

Finding a site in the Site Manager

TO FIND A SITE IN THE SITE MANAGER

1. Select the **Site Manager**.
2. Right-click and select **Find Text in Site Manager**.
3. Type in some letters from the site name.
4. Select **OK**.
5. If a site other than the one you wanted was highlighted, right-click and select **Find Next**, until the desired site is highlighted.

Note:
The **Find Text in Site Manager** tool is not case sensitive, searches from the top to the bottom of your site listings, and does not recognize wildcards.

Creating and using bookmarks

You can have special entries called Bookmarks associated with sites that open a specific local or remote folder (or both).

TO CREATE A BOOKMARK

1. Select and then open the folder you want to bookmark.
2. Right-click in either the remote or local window.
3. Choose **Bookmark Current Folder** from the pop-up menu. The new bookmark appears in the **Site Manager** as a sub-listing of the remote site's entry. Bookmarks created in this manner are assigned the remote folder as their default name.

TO ACCESS A BOOKMARK

1. Double-click a bookmark in the **Site Manager** (displayed as a sub-item under the site icon).
2. A new remote window opens displaying the bookmark's remote folder if specified; otherwise the root folder displays. The **Site Manager** switches to **Local Drives**, displaying the local folder specified in the bookmark.

Or

1. Select the purple bookmark icon next to the folder path field just above the local or remote folder pane.
2. A new context window appears, displaying the available bookmarks for the current site.
3. Select the desired bookmark.

TO MODIFY A BOOKMARK

1. Select the bookmark.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. In **Remote path**, type a new path if you want to change the bookmark's remote folder.
4. In **Local path**, type a new path if you want to change the bookmark's local folder.
5. Select **OK**.

TO REMOVE A BOOKMARK

1. Select the bookmark in the **Site Manager.**
2. On the menu bar, click **File > Delete** (when using CuteFTP Professional) or click the **Delete** button (when using CuteFTP Home.)
3. Select **Yes**.

TO RENAME A BOOKMARK

1. Select the bookmark.
2. From the menu select **File > Rename**.
3. Type a new name.
4. Press the **Enter** key.

8

Transferring Files and Folders

Transferring files and folders

To upload files (transfer from a local to remote computer)

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. In the Local (left) pane, locate the file or folder you want to upload.
3. Select and drag the item from the Local (left) pane to the Remote (right) pane.

To download files (transfer from a remote to a local computer)

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. In the Remote (right) pane, locate the file or folder you want to download.
3. Select and drag the item from the Remote (right) pane to the Local (left) pane.

Queuing Files and Folders for Transfer

To display or hide the queue

1. From the menu, choose **View > Show Panes**.
2. Select the **Queue Pane** to show or hide it.

To add items to the queue

1. **Connect** to a site.
2. **Locate** the file(s) or folder(s) you want to upload or download in your local or remote pane.
3. **Drag** the selected item(s) to the transfer queue window.
4. **Repeat** as necessary. You can also connect to other sites and add files and folders to the queue.
5. Once you have finished adding items to the transfer queue, you can change queue item **attributes** if desired, such as destination path, transfer type, scheduling and more by selecting the item, and pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard.

6. You can change the transfer **priority** of items by selecting them, then them up or down in the queue. A blue line displays to indicate where the items will move.
7. Once you are ready to begin **processing** the queue, choose T**ools > Queue > Transfer All** from the menu.

Note:
Events you schedule for synchronizations also appear in the queue. To modify

Transfer queue icon legend

The queue icons display next to each item in the Queue pane.

The item is in the queue but a transfer has not been attempted or scheduled.

The item is in the queue and a transfer has been scheduled, but has not occurred yet.

This item's transfer is starting.

There is an existing file of the same name in the destination folder and you will have to decide whether to **Overwrite** the existing file, **Skip** the transfer, **Resume** an interrupted transfer, **Rename** the file you are transferring, or **Numerate** the file you are transferring.

The item transfer is in progress, this usually appears for large transfers.

The item transferred successfully.

The item transfer has been interrupted, but CuteFTP is still trying to complete the transfer.

The item transfer has been skipped, usually because you chose to skip it manually or in a **Smart Overwrite** rule that you chose previously.

You have stopped the item transfer while it was in progress. You can still Resume this transfer.

The server has refused to complete the item transfer for some reason. Your transfer log will show an **ERROR:>** message with a little more detail.

Transferring files in order

You can see the order in which queued items transfer at the left end of the **Queue** pane. The numbers in the column indicate the order of transfer. By default, files transfer in the same order that they are added to the queue.

TO TRANSFER ITEMS IN THE ORDER ADDED

1. Sort the local or remote panes by clicking on the corresponding column header (Name, Date, Size, etc.)
2. Select the items to transfer.
3. Drag the selected items into the queue. Note that the items are ordered in the same way they were sorted prior to adding them to the queue.
4. Right-click in the **Queue** pane.
5. Choose **Transfer All**. CuteFTP transfers the files in the order reflected by the numbers in the left column of the queue.

TO SET A SPECIFIC TRANSFER ORDER

1. Move transfer items to the **Queue** pane.
2. Select the pound sign (**#**) column header to sort the items by their transfer order.
3. Select an item in the queue.
4. On the menu bar, choose **Tools > Queue > Change Order**.
5. Select **Move to Top** to transfer the selected item first.

Or

- Select **Move to Bottom** to transfer the selected item last.

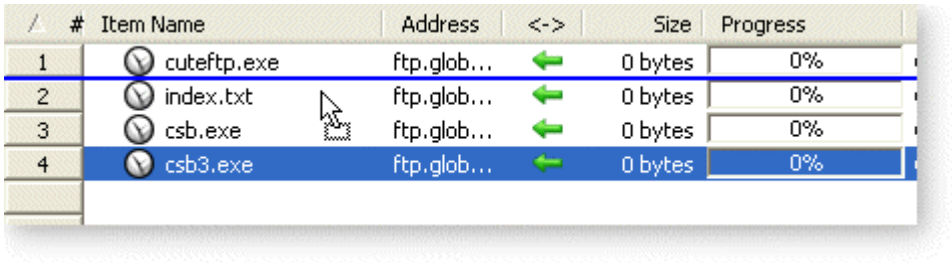
Or

- Select **Move Up One** to transfer the selected item before the previous item in the queue.

Or

- Select **Move Down One** to transfer the selected item after the following item in the queue.

Tip:
To change an item's place in the transfer order, select the line item and drag up or down in the queue. A blue line indicates the item's new position in the queue.



Moving an item from position 4 to position 2 prior to transfer.

Stopping transfers

TO STOP A TRANSFER

1. Select the item(s) in the queue to be stopped
2. On the menu bar, click **View > Stop**.

TO REMOVE ITEMS QUEUED FOR TRANSFER

1. Highlight a file listed in the **Queue** Pane.
2. On the menu bar, go to **Tools > Queue > Remove Selected**.
3. A message appears asking if you are sure you want to remove the item from the queue.
4. Click **Yes**.

Tip:
Remove All deletes every file from the queue. **Remove Finished** deletes all of the items from the queue that have completed their transfer.

TO RESUME A STOPPED TRANSFER

1. Select the stopped item in the queue.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Transfer Selected**.

TO RESET A FAILED TRANSFER

1. Select the item in the queue.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Reset Selected**.
3. To restart the transfer, choose **Tools > Queue > Transfer Selected** from the menu.

Tip:
The shortcut keys **Esc** or **F9** stop active transfers. Press Esc once to stop the last command (be it a transfer or connection request). Press Esc

repeatedly to cycle through active transfers and/or connections and stop them one by one. You can also select multiple items in the queue and select Esc to stop them. Use the **Del** key to stop and remove selected queue items.

Resuming transfers

TO AUTOMATICALLY RESUME TRANSFERS

CuteFTP automatically attempts to resume interrupted transfers caused by lossy connection, server kicked users, a slow server, and so on. CuteFTP does not auto-resume interrupted transfers when the remote server is unreachable because there is no connection available, the server is down, or for any other reason. In those situations, you must manually resume the transfer.

TO MANUALLY RESUME A TRANSFER

1. Select the stopped item in the queue.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Transfer Selected** or **Transfer All**.

Note:
In you have not shut down and restarted CuteFTP since the interruption took place, CuteFTP assumes that the transfer is within its original context and attempts to resume it from the point it left off. If the transfer is no longer in the original context, CuteFTP prompts you to overwrite the destination file, that is, to start over again. You can set up overwrite rules to tailor such situations to your specific needs.

TO RESUME A STOPPED TRANSFER

1. Select the stopped item in the queue.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Transfer Selected**.

TO RESET A FAILED TRANSFER

1. Select the item in the queue.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Reset Selected**.
3. To restart the transfer, choose **Tools > Queue > Transfer Selected** from the menu.

Tip:
The shortcut keys **Esc** or **F9** stop active transfers. Press Esc once to stop the last command (be it a transfer or connection request). Press Esc repeatedly to cycle through active transfers and/or connections and stop

them one by one. You can also select multiple items in the queue and select Esc to stop them. Use the **Del** key to stop and remove selected queue items.

Using the clipboard to transfer

You can use the Windows' Clipboard function to copy and paste a URL directly into CuteFTP with the **Connect to URL** feature. This allows you to connect to a site, or if specified, download a file.

1. From the browser or Windows application of your choice, copy the URL to the clipboard. The URL may be general (ftp://www.globalscape.com) or specific (ftp://www.globalscape.com/pub/cuteftp/cute2632.exe).
2. Return to CuteFTP. From the menu, choose **File > Connect > Connect to URL**.
3. Paste the URL into the **Connect to URL window**.
4. Select **OK**.

CuteFTP parses the URL and connects to the site or, if specified, starts downloading the file.

The following formats are supported:

- ftp://user:pass@host.host.com:port
- ftp://user:pass@host.host.com
- ftp://user@host.host.com
- ftp://host.host.com:port
- ftp://host.host.com
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l/p: user/pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
- ftp://[any of the above formats]/pathnametofile/[optional filename]

CuteFTP Professional also accepts http, https, sftp, and ftps URLs.

PASTING A URL DIRECTLY INTO THE TRANSFER ENGINE

The Paste URL feature is also accessible from the Transfer Engine icon in the Windows system tray.

1. Right-click the TE icon and select **Download URL.**
2. Paste the URL into the **Download URL** dialog box and select **OK**. the TE attempst to download the URL regardless of whether the URL specifies a path to a folder or a file.

Depending on the URL you paste, CuteFTP tries to connect and navigate to the specified folder or attempst to download the item. Following is a sample of path endings and how CuteFTP handles it:

Path endings	Interpretation	Action Attempted
ftp://host/dir.ext/	A folder	Connection
host/.ext/	A folder	Connection
host/dir/	A folder	Connection
host/dir	A folder	Connection
host/dir.ext	A file	Download
host/.ext	A file	Download

Scheduling transfers

TO SCHEDULE DOWNLOADS

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. Select the destination folder in the **Local Drives** pane.
3. In the **Remote** pane, select the file or folder you want to transfer.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Download Advanced > Download Scheduled**. The **Scheduling Properties** dialog appears.
5. Select the **Schedule the current item** check box.
6. In the **Start on** option boxes, choose a date and time.
7. Select the **Enable Recurrence** check box and continue with step eight if you want the download to repeat automatically. If you do not want the download to repeat automatically, clear the **Enable Recurrence** check box and skip to step nine.
8. In the **Repeat every** option boxes, choose how often you want the download to repeat.
9. Select **OK**.

TO SCHEDULE UPLOADS

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. Open the folder where you want to send the file or folder.
3. In the **Local Drives** pane, highlight the file or folder you want to transfer.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Upload Advanced > Upload Scheduled**.
5. Select the **Schedule the current item** check box.
6. In the **Start on** option boxes, choose a date and time.
7. Select the **Enable Recurrence** check box and continue with step eight if you want the upload to repeat automatically. If you do not want the upload to repeat automatically, clear the **Enable Recurrence** check box and skip to step nine.
8. In the **Repeat every** option boxes, choose how often you want the upload to repeat.
9. Select **OK**.

TO SCHEDULE TRANSFERS FROM THE QUEUE WINDOW

1. In the Queue pane, select the file to be transferred.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Schedule Selected**.
3. Select the **Schedule the current item** check box.
4. In the **Start on** option boxes, choose a date and time.
5. Select the **Enable Recurrence** check box and continue with step six if you want the transfer to repeat automatically. If you do not want the transfer to repeat automatically, clear the **Enable Recurrence** check box and skip to step seven.
6. In the **Repeat every** option boxes, choose how often you want the transfer to repeat. boxes.
7. Choose **OK**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- You can schedule multiple transfers.
- CuteFTP continues to run and complete any scheduled or pending transfers even f you exit the program before a transfer is scheduled to start, unless the "Don't close the transfer engine if tasks are pending" is disabled under **Tools > Global Options > General** page.
- If you manually close the Transfer Engine or shut down the computer before a scheduled transfer can start, CuteFTP prompts if you still want to complete the scheduled transfer the next time you open CuteFTP.
- If you leave CuteFTP or the Transfer Engine open to accomplish a number of tasks, it is a good idea to configure CuteFTP to delete successfully finished items from the queue.

Filtering Transfers

CuteFTP allows you to set filters that automatically include or exclude files from transfer so you don't have to manually. You define the filters in the filter dialog box, then apply them to individual transfers, or use them on all transfers. You can also use filters during folder synchronizations.

TO TRANSFER FILTERED ITEMS

1. Select the pane displaying the files or directory you want to apply a filter to.
2. From the menu, choose **View > Filter...** The **Filter** dialog appears.
3. From the **Filter Properties** tab, select **Enable filtering**.
4. If you want to filter at the folder level, select **Apply filtering to folder names**. If a filter you add matches a folder name, the entire contents of that folder are included or excluded along with the folder.
5. If you want the filters to work during transfers, select **Apply to file transfers**.
6. Select the **Filter Mask tab** and add any files you want to include.
7. Select the **Filter NOT Mask** tab and add any items you want to exclude.
8. Select **OK**.
9. Select the files that remain visible and choose **File > Upload Advanced > Upload filtered** from the menu (or **Download filtered** if you are downloading.).

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- You can configure two filter sets: one for the local pane, and one for the remote pane. Note that CuteFTP applies the filter parameters to *all* of the contents, directories, and subdirectories displayed in that pane.
- Filtering works with folder synchronizing.
- You can filter by file extensions, for example, .htm, .php, .asp., etc.

Site-to-site transfers (FXP)

TO PERFORM A SITE-TO-SITE TRANSFER

1. Connect to each site (source and destination).
2. Choose **Window > Tile** from the menu.
3. Drag the file from one Remote Pane to another. The **Queue pane** displays a double arrow (<->), to indicate a site-to-site transfer.

TO DISPLAY MORE THAN ONE REMOTE SITE AT A TIME

1. Connect to two or more sites.

2. Choose **Window > Cascade,** or **Window > Tile** from the menu.
3. Select **Maximize** in the upper right of any remote pane to return to the default, tabbed view.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- If you are transferring between sites with SSH2 or SSL connections, transfers between them are not secure unless both servers support SSCN.
- Because site-to-site transfers are considered a security risk, many servers do not support them or optionally decline to do so. The following table displays supporting servers.

  BLUE servers must be present for successful site-to-site transfer.

  RED servers make site-to-site transfers impossible.

  BLACK servers can perform site-to-site transfers if a **BLUE** server is on the other side.

  A site-to-site transfer with at least one **RED** server or two **BLACK** servers will fail.

FTP Servers	GS Secure Server	Vs_ftp server 2.0.0	VarFTPD 1.7	ServU 2.5a	SSLftp 0.10	SunOS 5.7	BeroFTPD 1.3.4(6)	ProFTPD 1.2.0pre10	Vu-2.4.2	Netware FTP Server for NW 3.1x, 4.xx (v1.10)	MVS (TCPFTP1 IBM FTP CS V2R7)	IIS 5.0	IIS 4.0	Vu-2.5.0	Vu-2.6.0(1)	Vu-2.6.0(3)
GS Secure Server	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
Vs_FTP server 2.0.0	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
VarFTPD 1.7	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
ServU 2.5a	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
SSLftp 0.10	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
SunOS 5.7	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
BeroFTPD 1.3.4(6)	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
ProFTPD 1.2.0pre10	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
Vu-2.4.2	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
Netware FTP Server for NW 3.1x, 4.xx (v1.10)	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
MVS (TCPFTP1 IBM FTP CS V2R7)	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
IIS 5.0	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
IIS 4.0	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
Vu-2.5.0	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
Vu-2.6.0(1)	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
Vu-2.6.0(3)	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail

You can configure the ProFTPD 1.2.3 Orc3 server, the wu-ftpd 2.6.0 server and the MS IIS 5.0 server to allow FXP.

HISTORY OF FXP

Separate CONTROL and DATA connections allows transmitting data not only between client and server; it allows a client to control two FTP servers at once and transfer data between them by issuing a PASV command on one server and then a matching PORT command on the other. Thus, one server connects to the other instead of to a client. This behavior is not a hack; it is part of the official FTP specs. Today, it is widely known as FXP.

Multi-part (accelerated) transfers

You can greatly speed up the transfer of large files with multi-part transfers. A multi-part transfer divides large files and sends the parts over multiple FTP sessions.

TO PERFORM A MULTI-PART DOWNLOAD

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. Select the file you want to transfer in the Remote Pane.
3. Open the destination folder in the **Local Drives** pane.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Download Advanced > Multi-part Download**.
5. Choose **HIGH** to split the file into two parts or **MAX** to divide the file into more parts.

TO PERFORM A MULTI-PART UPLOAD

1. Connect to a remote site.
2. Select the file you want to transfer in the **Local Drives** pane.
3. From the menu, choose **File > Upload Advanced > Multi-part Upload**.
4. Choose **HIGH** to split the file into two parts or **MAX** to divide the file into more parts.

Note:
You can only use multi-part uploads with servers that support the COMB command, such as GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server.

Note:
Very large files can take time to combine, so you might have to manually refresh (F5) the screen after a large multi-part transfer to see the resulting single, combined file on the remote server.

Tip:
You can quickly gauge the effectiveness of the transfer by highlighting that item in the queue pane, and clicking on the small plus sign + next to the item name. The item will expand to show you all parts of the transfer with the average speed of each part.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- Multi-part transfers are not very effective for smaller files.
- Multi-part downloads do not occur for sites that do not support resume downloading.
- Multi-part transfers are not very effective within your own network.
- Multi-part transfers are not very effective for modems slower than 56kb, because most FTP servers can at least transfer at that speed.
- Multi-part transfers do not work if the FTP site does not allow multiple simultaneous connections from the same user or IP address.
- Due to added overhead on the processor of a server when generating encrypted transfers, multi-part downloads over SSH and SSL can be ineffective and are not recommended.

Accelerating ASCII transfers with Mode Z

Mode Z compression compresses files on the fly as you transfer, saving bandwidth and improving transfer times. This feature is turned on by default, and is used whenever you connect to a server that supports Mode Z.

To turn on Mode Z compression

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Transfer** from the left-hand navigation pane.
3. Select **Apply MODE Z compression to ASCII transfers when possible**.

Transferring files in binary or ASCII mode

TO CHOOSE THE TRANSFER MODE

1. From the menu, choose **File > Transfer Type**.
2. Choose **ASCII**, **Binary**, or **Auto**.

TO TRANSFER SPECIFIC FILE TYPES IN ASCII MODE

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Transfer**.
3. Select **ASCII Types**.

4. In the right pane, enter the file extension for the file type you want to transfer in ASCII mode in the **ASCII extensions** box. If the extension is already in the list, proceed with the transfers.
5. Select **Add**.
6. Select **OK**.
7. Proceed with transfers.

TO TRANSFER SPECIFIC FILE TYPES IN BINARY MODE

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Transfer**.
3. Select **ASCII Types**. A list of the file types that are transferred in ASCII mode will be displayed. If the file type you want to transfer is not displayed, select **OK** and proceed to step seven. If it is displayed continue with step four.
4. Select the extension of the file you want to transfer in binary mode.
5. Select **Remove**.
6. Select **OK**.
7. Proceed with transfers.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- Auto is the default transfer type, and sends files in the mode specified for each file's extension. All extensions are sent in binary mode unless they are listed in **Global Options > Transfer Settings > ASCII Types**.
- SSH2 servers do not support ASCII transfers (see http://www.ssh.com/tech/archive/secsh.cfm). CuteFTP Professional adjusts for this by automatically stripping line feeds prior to uploads and restores them during downloads (prior to the file getting written to disk).
- You can specify the transfer type for a particular site in your Site Manager under its **Site Properties > Type** tab.
- You can change the transfer type for a single CuteFTP session by choosing **File > Transfer Type** from the menu. Once CuteFTP is restarted, it reverts to the transfer type set under Global Options.

Verifying integrity of transferred files

TO VERIFY FILES HAVE SUCCESSFULLY TRANSFERRED

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** dialog appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Transfer**.
3. Select **Events**.

4. In the right pane, select the **Verify file integrity when transferring to/from GlobalSCAPE's FTP Server** check box.
5. Select **OK**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

The File Integrity CRC Checksum is used ONLY if all of the following are true statements:

- The file integrity feature is turned on in CuteFTP.
- The FEAT command is enabled in CuteFTP (**Tools > Global Options > Navigation Settings**).
- The remote server supports both FEAT and XCRC and has enabled it for the specific user account.
- The files are binary files transferring in binary mode.
- The destination file size is smaller than the source and the server supports resume OR the destination is equal to the source size (regardless of resume capability).

Few servers, other than GlobalSCAPE's Secure FTP Server and Enhanced File Transfer Server, support the required XCRC command.

Compressing and Decompressing

TO COMPRESS FILES FOR UPLOADS

1. Connect to a site.
2. Choose the destination folder in the Remote pane.
3. Select the item(s) you want to upload in the **Local Drives** pane.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Upload Advanced > Upload Compressed**.
5. The menu displays file names with three different extensions. Each extension identifies a compression scheme.
6. Choose the file name with the extension for the compression scheme you want.

TO DECOMPRESS A LOCAL ARCHIVE

1. Choose the local folder where the archive is located.
2. Select the archive to be expanded in the Local Drives pane.
3. From the menu, choose **Tools > Compression > Decompress**. The contents of the archive expand into a directory with the same name as the archive.

Note:
You cannot decompress a file on a remote FTP server from within CuteFTP's interface. To decompress an archive remotely, use a tool such as CuteZIP and GlobalSCAPE SecureFTP Server and create an Event Rule or Custom Command (on the Server) that will decompress archives uploaded to the server (either automatically, or as a result of a custom

command sent by the client). See this custom command example for more information.

Note:
To created encrypted archives for upload, you need a copy of CuteZIP and a call script to encrypt, compress and then upload an archive. For more information, see Automatically encrypting and compressing transfers.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- .**zip** is the industry standard archival method (wide support, medium compression).
- .**cab** is a Microsoft format (not very wide support, stronger compression than ZIP).
- .**gzip/tar** is a UNIX format (files are stored in a "Tarball" then compressed).

Using scripts to transfer files

You can write scripts to transfer files using CuteFTP Professional's Transfer Engine (TE). With scripts you can interact directly with the TE using common programming languages such as Visual Basic (VB) or other scripting languages supported by the Windows Scripting Host (WSH).

Sample scripts and examples are available in Transfer Engine Help.

You can also use CuteFTP's macro recorder to capture entire sessions to a script for future playback.

Tip:
To conserve resources, if you leave CuteFTP or the Transfer Engine open to accomplish a number of tasks, you should set CuteFTP to delete successfully finished items from the queue.

Recording a macro

CuteFTP Professional can record and playback entire sessions using the powerful macro record/playback tool. Sessions are recorded in Visual Basic Script and take advantage of CuteFTP's COM exposed transfer engine (TE) interface.

To start recording a macro

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Macros and Scripting > Record > Start Recording**.
2. Connect to your site and perform the tasks you want to record.
3. When you are finished recording the macro click **Tools > Macros and Scripting > Record > Stop Recording**.
4. Enter a name for the macro in the **Filename** box and select **Save**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

The macro recorder can record most events supported by the CuteFTP Professional's TE COM interface:

- Connect (FTP, FTPS, SFTP, HTTPS) including all parameters (OTP, CCC, AUTH_TLS, etc.)
- Disconnect
- Upload
- Download
- Site to Site Transfer
- Synchronize
- URL Transfer
- Create Local Folder
- Create Remote Folder
- Rename Local Folder
- Rename Remote Folder
- Remove Local Folder
- Remove Local Folder
- Raw FTP Command

Note:
The macro recorder uses all defined parameters set in the CuteFTP interface for Socks and Proxy information. Therefore, there is no need to add "UseProxy" to the resulting script (macro) that is created.

Playing back a recorded macro

TO PLAYBACK A MACRO FROM WITHIN CUTEFTP'S INTERFACE

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Macros and Scripting > Run > Browse**. An **Open** dialog appears.
2. Navigate to the folder where your macro is saved.
3. Select the macro.
4. Select **Open**. he **Open** dialog closes and the macro runs.

TO PLAYBACK A MACRO (SCRIPT) FROM OUTSIDE OF CUTEFTP'S INTERFACE

1. In Windows Explorer, locate the macro file you previously created as "something.vbs" and run it.

2. CuteFTP's Transfer Engine performs the recorded events without launching the interface.

Note:
You must have the Windows Scripting Host (WSH) installed in order to playback recorded macros or scripts.

Adding custom commands

Custom Commands allow you to specify a raw FTP command sequence and assign shortcuts or toolbar links to these sequences.

TO ADD A CUSTOM COMMAND

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Custom Commands > Edit Custom Commands**.
2. In the **Custom Commands** dialog box, click the **New Folder** button.
3. Enter a name for the folder.
4. Select **New Command**.
5. Enter a name for the command.
6. Select **Properties** button.
7. In the **Custom Command Properties** dialog box, enter the command or command sequence you want in the **Command** box.
8. Optionally, select **Shortcut Key** and then press the keys on your keyboard for the shortcut. This step is optional.
9. Optionally, select **Change Icon** to select a toolbar icon for the command. Select the icon you want, then select **OK**.
10. Select **Place on the custom commands toolbar** to include the new command on the **Custom Commands** toolbar.
11. Select **OK** twice to accept the changes and close the **Custom Commands** dialog box.

TO ADD COMMAND SEQUENCES

1. Follow steps 1-7 above.
2. Add a line break between command sequences when entering them into the Command box.

```
Example: USER %u \n PASS %p
```

TO USE A CUSTOM COMMAND

1. Connect to a site.

2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Custom Commands>** ***(your command)***.

TO DISPLAY THE CUSTOM COMMANDS BAR

- From the menu, choose **View > Toolbars > Custom Commands Bar**.

> **Note:**
> The remote site must be the active pane for a command to be sent. Once sent, you can view the server's response in the log window.

Saving and reusing a list of transfer tasks

TO SAVE A LIST OF TRANSFER TASKS

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Load & Save Queue > Save Queue**.
2. Choose a name and location in the **Save As** dialog box.
3. Select **Save**.

TO REUSE A LIST OF TRANSFER TASKS (LOAD A PREVIOUSLY SAVED QUEUE)

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Load & Save Queue > Load Queue**.
2. Select the a previously saved Queue file in the **Open** dialog box.
3. Select **Open**.
4. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Transfer All**.

> **Notes:**
> When you drag items from the local drive to the Queue, they transfer to the site currently displayed in the Remote pane.
>
> Queue files are saved with a **.cpx** extension.

Improving slow transfers

If you are having problems with slow transfer speeds, try fine tuning CuteFTP. Try the following:

MAKE SURE THAT MODE Z IS TURNED ON

Mode Z compression compresses files as they are transferred. Reducing the file size reduces the necessary bandwidth and improves transfer times. If this option is turned on CuteFTP will take advantage of any server that supports Mode Z.

TWEAK THE RECEIVE AND SEND BUFFERS

Setting these buffers allow you to fine tune transfers over high latency or lossy connections like those over satellite links or with legacy CDMA wireless connections. It is unlikely you will ever need to adjust this setting, but if you have problems with successful transfers and suspect the latency or quality of the connection is at fault, try tweaking these buffers.

The receive buffer holds data until CuteFTP is ready to read it; the send buffer holds data until it can be sent to the server. Typically, both send and receive buffers should be set to the same size. The default is set at 65536 bytes, the normal maximum window size of TCP.

You can measure the latency and estimate the available bandwidth with network monitoring tools. There is some guesswork involved, as most tools are not entirely accurate, but they can guide you to finding a sweet spot where transmissions are successful. If you have a lossy connection, try lowering the buffer size. If you have high latency, a higher buffer size might help.

Normally, the optimal buffer size is your bandwidth times the latency of the link. So,

```
bandwidth (in bits) * latency (round trip time in
seconds) = socket buffer size (in bits)
```

Convert bits to bytes (bits/8=bytes) for the buffer size.

So, if your bandwidth is 1,536,000 bps and you have a latency of 200ms (.2 seconds), your socket buffers should be set to 38400:

```
1536000*.2=307200 bits
307200/8=38,400 bytes
```

You can also try halving or doubling the buffer size. For example, if the buffer is set to 65536 (64kb), try 32768 (32kb).

TURN OFF TIME STAMP IN LOGS

When this feature is on, CuteFTP adds a time stamp next to each log event. This option does consume system resources, and if performance is critical, you can turn this off. For more information, see Record/Display time stamps in Log file settings

TRY USING MULTI-PART TRANSFERS

If you are transferring large files, try using a multi-part transfer. You can only use this option if the server you are connecting to supports it.

CHECK THE GLOBAL BANDWIDTH LIMIT

Check to see if the global bandwidth limit is limiting your throughput. This setting in Global Options throttles the bandwidth of all sessions on CuteFTP. See Global bandwidth limits in Transfer Settings.

Transferring manually

Use this function to transfer a specific file if you know its exact location and you are unable to navigate to that location or do not have LIST permissions for that folder.

TO DOWNLOAD A FILE MANUALLY

1. Select the destination folder in the Local pane.
2. Connect to the site where the file exists.
3. Select any file or folder.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Download Advanced > Download Manually**. The **File to Download** dialog appears.
5. In **Download path**, type the path to the file you want to download.
6. Select **OK**.

TO UPLOAD A FILE MANUALLY

1. Connect to a site.
2. Open the destination folder in the Remote pane.
3. In the Local pane select any file.
4. From the menu, choose **File > Upload Advanced > Upload Manually**. The **File to Upload** dialog appears.
5. In **Upload path**, enter the complete path to the file you want to upload.
6. Select **OK**.

Manually enter FTP commands

You can communicate with an FTP site on the lowest possible level.

TO MANUALLY ENTER AN FTP COMMAND

1. Connect to a site.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Enter FTP Command**.
3. Enter the command such as **LIST** or **CWD** or **PWD** in the **Input FTP command** box.
4. Select **OK**.

Note:
You can also input multiple commands to the FTP server by using the **Custom Commands** feature.

9

Managing Files and Folders

Opening, editing, renaming and deleting files

You can work with files on local and remote drives from within CuteFTP.

TO OPEN A FILE

1. Select a file in **Local Drives** or the Remote pane.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Execute**. The selected program opens and displays or runs the file.

> **Note**
> File > Execute only works on executable files.

TO EDIT A FILE

1. Select a file in **Local Drives** or the Remote pane.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Edit** or **File > View**. The file opens in CuteFTP's built-in HTML editor.
3. Make any desired changes.
4. To save the changes, choose **File > Save** from the menu.

> **Note:**
> The integrated editor opens in full-screen mode. When you exit the editor, CuteFTP restores the screen to its original state. Cycle through the open panes, including any editor tabs, by pressing Ctrl+Tab on your keyboard.

TO RENAME A FILE

1. Select a file in **Local Drives** or the Remote pane.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Rename**.
3. Enter the new name for the file and press the **Enter** key on your keyboard.

Warning:
If you change the extension when you rename the file, you may not be able to open the file in the proper program.

TO DELETE A FILE

1. Select a file in the **Local Drives** or the Remote pane.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Delete**. CuteFTP displays a message asking if you are sure you want to delete the file.
3. Select **Yes**.

Updating or refreshing folder listings

To update or refresh a folder listing

1. Click in the pane where the folder is displayed.
2. On the menu bar, click **View > Refresh**.

To update remote folder listings automatically

1. On the menu bar, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, select **Navigation**.
3. Select the **Auto-refresh the remote pane after uploading a file or folder** check box.
4. Click **OK**.

Listing files and folders in order

TO SORT FILES AND FOLDERS IN ORDER BY NAME

1. Select the **Remote** or **Local Drives** pane.
2. From the menu, choose **View > View > Details**.
3. Select the **Name** column header in the Remote or Local drives pane.
4. Each time you select the column header the items list in the opposite order.

Tip:
You can sort by any column when in **Details** view.

TO SORT FILES AND FOLDERS IN ORDER IN THE QUEUE

1. Select the **Queue** pane.
2. Select a column header in the **Queue** pane. The transfer items are listed in alphabetic order of the selected column's contents.

3. Each time you select the column header the items list in the opposite order.

Note:
The order items are listed in the queue is not necessarily the order in which they transfer. The numbers in the leftmost column of the queue indicate the order of transfer.

Changing how files and folders are displayed

You can display files and folders in one of four ways:

LARGE ICONS

1. Select the Local or Remote drives pane.
2. From the menu, choose **View > View > Large Icons**.

SMALL ICONS

1. Click in the Local or Remote drives pane.
2. From the menu, choose **View > View > Small Icons**.

LIST

1. Right click in the Local or Remote drives pane.
2. From the menu, choose **View > View > List**.

SIZE AND DATE DETAILS

1. Right-click in the Local or Remote drives pane.
2. From the menu, choose **View > View > Details**.

Finding files and folders

Search for a specific file or folder in a local folder or a remote folder.

TO FIND A FILE OR FOLDER

1. Select the directory level you want to search.
2. From the menu, choose **Edit > Find**.
3. Enter the item name. You can also use wildcards.
4. Select **OK**.
5. If the item you wanted wasn't selected, choose **Edit > Find Next** until it is.

Note:
Find and **Find Next** are not case sensitive and only search from the top to the bottom of your listings.

Selecting a group of items

You can select (highlight) items in the remote, local, or queue pane by name or type using **Group Select** and wildcard masks.

TO SELECT ALL FILES OF A CERTAIN TYPE

1. Choose the pane displaying the files you want to select.
2. From the menu, choose **Edit > Group Select**.
3. In the **Select group** box, enter *. (asterisk, period) and then the extension for the file type you want to select.
4. Clear **Mask directories** to exclude folders from the selection.
5. Select **Remove Selection** to include previously selected files in the new group you are selecting, or clear the check box to unselect any previously selected items that are not in the new group.
6. Select **OK**.

TO SWITCH A SELECTION FROM THE HIGHLIGHTED TO GROUP, TO ALL NON-HIGHLIGHTED ITEMS

- From the menu, choose **Edit > Invert Selection**.

TO REMOVE ITEMS FROM A GROUP SELECTION

1. Select the items to remove from the group.
2. Choose **Edit > Group Deselect** from the menu.
3. In **Deselect group**, enter the name of the file you want to remove, or use wildcard masks to remove a group of items.
4. Select **Mask directories** to include folders in the action.
5. Select **OK**.

Moving items from one folder to another on a remote server

Move selected items from one remote folder to another remote folder on the same server.

TO MOVE ITEMS FROM ONE REMOTE FOLDER TO ANOTHER

1. Connect to a site.
2. Open a folder on the remote site.
3. Select items in the folder.
4. From the menu, choose **Edit > Move to Folder**.
5. Enter the path where you want to send the selected items in the **Move to folder** box.
6. Select **OK**.

Changing file and folder permissions

You can set who can open, change, or delete files and folders on remote sites.

TO CHANGE PERMISSIONS FOR A SINGLE REMOTE FILE OR FOLDER

1. Connect to a site.
2. Select the file or folder you want to change permissions for.
3. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
4. Select the permissions desired.
5. Select **OK**.

TO CHANGE PERMISSIONS FOR A GROUP OF REMOTE FILES OR FOLDERS

1. Connect to a site.
2. Select a group of files or folders.
3. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
4. Select the check boxes next to the permissions you want for yourself (**Owner**), a **Group** of users, and the general **Public**.
5. Select **OK**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- A gray check signifies the permission is granted for some files in a selected group, but not in others. You can still change the permission for the whole group.
- If you cannot change permissions for a file or folder, the FTP server administrator must modify your account or the file permissions before you can modify permissions.

Choosing which files and folders to display (Filtering)

When you apply filters, you do not add or remove files, you simply set which files will be visible or invisible in CuteFTP.

TO CHOOSE WHICH FILES TO DISPLAY

1. From the menu, select **View > Filter**.
2. Select the **Enable Filtering** check box.
3. Select the **Filter Mask** tab.
4. Enter the names of files you want to display, or use wildcard masks to include a group of files.
5. Select **Add**.
6. Select the **Filter NOT Mask** tab.
7. Enter the names of files you want to Hide, or use wildcard masks to exclude a group of files.
8. Select **OK**.

TO CHOOSE WHICH FOLDERS TO DISPLAY

1. From the menu, select **View > Filter**.
2. Select **Enable Filtering**.
3. Select **Apply filtering to folder name(s)**.
4. Select the **Filter Mask** tab.
5. Enter the names of files and folders you want to display, or use wildcard masks to include groups of files and folders.
6. Select **Add**.
7. Select the **Filter NOT Mask** tab.
8. Enter the names of files and folders you want to Hide, or use wildcard masks to exclude groups of files and folders.
9. Select **OK**.

TO USE FILTERS WITH TRANSFERS

1. From the menu, select **View > Filter**.
2. Select **Enable Filtering**.
3. Select **Apply to file transfers**.
4. Set your filters in the **Filter Mask** tab and **Filter NOT Mask** tab.
5. Select **OK**.

TO MAKE FILTERS CASE SENSITIVE

1. From the menu, select **View > Filter**.
2. Select **Enable Filtering**.
3. Select **Case sensitive filtering**.
4. Set your filters.

5. Select **OK**.

TO USE SERVER FILTERS

1. From the menu, select **View > Filter**.
2. Select **Enable Filtering**.
3. Select **Enable server side filtering**.
4. Enter in a filter from the Unix ls program.
5. Select **OK**.

Displaying hidden files or folders

By default, some servers will hide files with names starting with a period such as ".htaccess" or ".profile".

TO SEE HIDDEN FILES ON A REMOTE SITE

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. Select the site with the hidden files.
3. Choose **File > Properties** from the menu.
4. Select the **Actions** tab.
5. Select **Filter**.
6. Select **Enable filtering**.
7. Select **Enable server side filtering**.
8. Enter **-a** in the **Remote** field.
9. Select **OK**.
10. Connect to your site.

Comparing folder contents by size and date

Use the **Compare Folder Contents** tool to highlight differences between a remote and a local folder.

TO COMPARE FOLDER CONTENTS BY DATE

1. Display a folder to in the **Local Drives** pane and connect to the folder you want to compare it to in the Remote pane.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Folder Tools > Compare Folder Contents**.
3. Select **Compare dates**.
4. Select **Ignore case** to compare all files with the same name, regardless of differing upper or lower case letters.

5. Select **OK**. CuteFTP compares all items with the same name and highlight any files or folders with time stamps that are different between the server and local folder. CuteFTP also highlights items that only exist on one site or the other.

TO COMPARE FOLDER CONTENTS BY SIZE

1. Display a folder in the **Local Drives** pane.
2. Connect to the folder you want to compare in the Remote pane.
3. From the menu, choose **Tools > Folder Tools > Compare Folder Contents**.
4. Select **Compare sizes**.
5. Select **Ignore case** to compare all files with the same name, regardless of differing upper or lower case letters.
6. Select **OK**. CuteFTP compares all items with the same name and highlight any files or folders with sizes that are different between the server and local folder. CuteFTP also highlights items that only exist on one site or the other.

Note:
Once differing files are highlighted, click and drag one file to move all of the files together.
If you clear **Ignore case**, two files with the same name spelled in differing case are treated as two different files. For example, test.txt and TEST.txt are considered two different files. If **Ignore case** is selected, test.txt and TEST.txt are considered the same.

Synchronizing folders

Use the synchronization tools to automatically make the contents of a remote and local folder exactly the same. You can monitor more than one folder, or synchronize multiple sites. Just schedule and queue the synchronizations you need.

TO SYNCHRONIZE FOLDERS

1. From the menu, choose **Tools** > **Folder Tools** > **Synchronize Folders**.
2. In **Enter the local path to synchronize**, type in the path, or browse to the local folder you want to synchronize.
3. In **Enter the remote path to synchronize**, type in the path, or browse to the local folder you want to synchronize.
4. In **Please select the direction of synchronization**, choose to Mirror Local, Mirror Remote, or Mirror Both.

Mirror Local keeps the local folder the same and changes the remote folder to match.

Mirror Remote keeps the remote folder the same and changes the local folder to match.

Mirror Both adds files to both folders and puts the latest version of all files in both folders.

5. If you want to include contents of subfolders in the synchronization select the **Include subfolders** check box.
6. Select the **Start now** button,

   OR

   select the **Schedule** button to automatically to start the synchronization later, or to repeat the synchronization at regular intervals.

TO REPEAT SYNCHRONIZATION AUTOMATICALLY

1. Select **Tools** > **Folder Tools** > **Synchronize Folders**.
2. Choose the folders and the direction.
3. Select the **Schedule** button.
4. When the scheduler appears, select the **Schedule the current item** check box.
5. Select the Enable recurrence check box.
6. Choose how often you want the synchronization to repeat.
7. Select **OK**. The task is added to your queue. If you close CuteFTP Professional, the Transfer Engine (represented by the icon in the System tray) still handles the mirroring and scheduling.

TO STOP A SYNCHRONIZATION TASK

1. Select the task in the **Queue Window**.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools** > **Queue** > **Remove Selected**.

TO USE FILTERS WITH SYNCHRONIZATIONS

- When you set up the synchronization , right-click in the pane you want to filter (local or remote), select **Filter...** and make sure that **Enable filtering** and **Apply to file transfers** are selected. The filter definitions in place when you set up the synchronization are applied. For more on using filters, see Filtering transfers.

ADVANCED FOLDER SYNCHRONIZATION

1. Select **Tools > Folder Tools > Synchronize Folders**. Select **Advanced** to display additional synchronization options.

Advanced folder synchronization

Select **Tools > Folder Tools > Synchronize Folders.** Select **Advanced** to display additional synchronization options.

FOR MATCHING FILENAMES ALWAYS

Use this setting to control the action taken by CuteFTP when synchronizing files with identical names.

- **Use global overwrite settings** This is the default choice. This uses overwrite settings adjusted for all sites in **Tools > Global Options > Transfer > Smart Overwrite**.
- **Overwrite** The transferring file replaces the destination file. When mirroring both folders, the most recent version of the file is kept.
- **Numerate** Both files are kept, and one is renamed with a number to distinguish between the two.
- **Skip** ignores matching files, and only transfers those files not yet present on the other system.

REMOTE FILE NAMES THAT DIFFER ONLY IN CASE

Use this setting to tell CuteFTP what to do with files having identically-spelled but differently-cased names. You can choose:

- **Transfer first file only and skip others:** The first file transfers and the rest are skipped.
- **Numerate files**: Both files are kept, and one is renamed with a number to distinguish between the two.
- **Show rename prompt**: CuteFTP prompts you to rename one of the identical files.

Since Windows file systems do not support case-sensitive file names, you may want to use this option when working with file systems that do (like Unix).

IGNORE SYMBOLIC LINKS

Select this option to prevent CuteFTP from following symbolic links when mirroring subfolders. This option should be left on unless symbolic links are absolutely needed. If you disable this option and a symbolic link points to a spot further up the folder tree from where the mirroring began you can get stuck in an infinite loop.

WHEN ONE-WAY MIRRORING, DELETE DESTINATION FILE IF IT DOES NOT EXIST IN THE SOURCE FOLDER

Select this option to make the mirrored folder a strict duplicate of the source folder. This updates old files and deletes unused files. If you disable this option, any extra files present in the mirrored folder are left in place.

ALWAYS PROMPT BEFORE DELETING

Disable this option to turn off the pop-up box that asks if you are sure you want to delete a file. If you plan to run synchronizations automatically, clear this check box, or the process will stop until the file deletion prompt is manually cleared.

TRANSFER ALL FILES IN BINARY TO COMPENSATE FOR ASCII FILE DIFFERENCES

Select this option to compensate for a problem that occurs when trying to synchronize ASCII files residing on UNIX file systems. Windows and UNIX differ slightly on how they store ASCII files, especially with regards to the End Of Line (EOL) or line breaks in ASCII documents. This difference causes an otherwise identical file to be seen as "different" when performing a synchronization tasks, due to the difference in size.

By forcing binary transfers, all files are transferred in binary mode, which would mean that an ASCII file residing on a local system would be transferred to the remote server with its EOLs intact. Some Web servers can accommodate for this while others may not. This could result in an html or other ASCII document not being displayed in the end user's browser.

Experiment with the two options if you are unsure of which one to choose. By default, force binary is turned off, as extra traffic might be acceptable, but conserving EOLs in a UNIX environment may not.

Backing up remote folders

You can schedule CuteFTP Professional to regularly create copies of remote files and folders on your local computer. You can also compress the backup automatically.

TO BACKUP A REMOTE FOLDER

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Folder Tools > Backup Remote Folder(s)**.
2. Enter the local path for the backup folder in **Local backup folder**.
3. Enter the path to the remote folder you wish to replicate in **Remote path for backup**.
4. Select **Include subfolders** to backup all folders within the target folder.
5. Choose a compression scheme from the **Compression** list.
6. Select **Start**, or if you want to schedule or repeat backups:

For repeated or timed backups

6. Select **Schedule**.
7. Select **Schedule the current item** and choose a starting date and time.
8. Select **Enable recurrence** and select how often you want the backup to repeat.
9. Select **OK**.
10. Select **Start**.

TO DISCONTINUE A SCHEDULED BACKUP TASK

1. Select the task in the **Queue**.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Remove Selected**.

Monitoring a local folder for changes

You can automatically upload any new or modified files or folders added to a specific local folder.

TO AUTOMATICALLY UPLOAD CHANGES TO A LOCAL FOLDER

1. Connect to the site that contains the folder that you want to upload changed or new files to.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Folder Tools > Monitor Local Folder(s)**.
3. In **Local folder to monitor**, select the browse button and navigate to the folder you want to monitor.
4. Select **Include subfolders** to monitor all folders within the target folder.
5. Verify that the full ftp address for the remote folder where you are uploading the files to is correct.
6. Choose the file modified date you want to begin monitoring changes on.
7. Select **Always overwrite** to overwrite any file with the same name on the server.

Warning:
If you select this check box, Smart Overwrite rules are ignored and there will be no warning before files are overwritten.

7. Select **Apply monitor filters** and choose **Filters** to monitor only certain files or file types in a folder.
8. Select **Attempt to autodetect...** to use system functions to better determine when a file is modified. If unchecked, CuteFTP cycles through the folder at the rate defined by **Monitor folder every n seconds** and looks for changes to the modified time-stamp.
9. Select **Start**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- Items deleted from the local folder will not be deleted from the remote folder.
- To discontinue a scheduled backup task
    1. Select the task in the **Queue**.
    2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Queue > Remove Selected**.

Listing files from HTTP sites

TO LIST FILES ON HTTP SITES

1. Connect to an HTTP site within CuteFTP Professional.
2. Files on the site will be listed in the remote pane.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

When you connect to HTTP sites in CuteFTP, the sites do not list file sizes, attributes, or dates like FTP sites do. This is because HTTP listings are not actual lists of files on the server.

CuteFTP downloads the server's index.html file and parses it, looking for links. Each link is then listed as an available file in the HTTP site's window. Because this is not an actual file listing, there may be files on the HTTP site not accessible to CuteFTP. Also, some of the files may just be links that lead to another HTTP site.

If you connect to an HTTP site that does not support the listing of folder contents, CuteFTP attempts to guess the contents of the HTTP server by scanning its Web pages.

10

Settings and Options

General settings

GENERAL SETTINGS

In this window, you choose when to start and stop the Transfer Engine, other startup options, and which folder to show in the **Local Drives** pane.

To display the General Settings window

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **General**.

Startup and exit events

- **Start the Transfer Engine on Windows startup**
  - When selected, the Transfer Engine starts automatically when your computer starts up.
  - When not selected, the Transfer Engine does not start until you start CuteFTP, or call it from a script.
- **On startup**
  - Choose **Display Site Manager** to display the **Site Manager** on program start.
  - Choose **Do Nothing** to keep the **Site Manager** from displaying on program start
  - Choose **Connect to the last connected to Site Manager site** to connect to the site you were connect to the last time you closed the program so long as the site is saved in the **Site Manager**.
- **On exit**
  - Choose **Don't close the Transfer Engine if tasks are pending** to complete unfinished or scheduled transfers after CuteFTP is closed. The Transfer Engine automatically shuts down after the last scheduled transfer.
  - Choose **Don't close the Transfer Engine** to leave the Transfer Engine running even when CuteFTP is closed and there are no transfers to complete. The Transfer Engine stays open until the computer is shut down, or you close the Transfer Engine from the System Tray.
  - Choose **Close the Transfer Engine** to shut it down whenever you close CuteFTP.

Download folder defaults

- **Use the current folder in the local pane as the default**
  - When selected, remote items dragged to the queue are downloaded to the folder displayed in the **Local Drives** pane.
  - When not selected, you can enter a path to a specific folder with **Use (text field)**.
- **Use (text field)**
  - Browse or type the path to a download location for remote items you place in the queue. All remote items dragged to the queue are downloaded to the specified folder.

LOG DISPLAY AND CAPTURE SETTINGS

To access the log display and log saving options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **General Settings**.
3. Select **Logs**.

Log text colors

- **STATUS**
  - Select the **STATUS:>** color icon to choose a new color for all log window status messages.
- **ERROR**
  - Select the **ERROR:> color icon** to choose a new color for all log window error messages.
- **COMMAND**
  - Select the **COMMAND:>** color icon to choose a new color for all log window command messages.
- **OTHER**
  - Select the **OTHER:>** color icon to choose a new display color for all other messages in log windows.

Log text fonts

- **Select Font**
  - Changes the style of text in the log windows.

Other log settings

- **Enable session (control connection) logs**
  - Select this to save each session log as a separate text file, and to display the log in the individual session log window.
  - Clear this to stop recording a log for each session, and to show no logs in the individual session log window.
- **Enable individual transfer item (data connection) logs**

- Select this to save the log for each item transferred as a separate text file.
- Clear this to stop recording a separate log for each item transferred.

- **Enable consolidated transfer logs (both session and all transfers in log pane)**
  - Select this to display all logs in the **Log Window** in the bottom of CuteFTP interface. This option also saves all activity in one log file.
  - Clear this to leave the Log Window blank and to stop recording all activity in a single log file.
- **Record/Display raw directory listing in logs**
  - Select this to include file lists and permissions as part of session logs and consolidated logs. This returns a RAW list, which is used commonly for debugging.
  - Clear this to exclude file lists and permissions from session logs and consolidated logs.
- **Show individual logs for each connection window**
  - Select this to show a log window in the remote pane for each site to which you connect.
  - Clear this to hide any log windows in the remote pane.

Tip:
Logs can consume a large amount of system resources (memory and hard drive space), depending on the amount and size of files being transferred. It is recommended that you disable most logging (especially data connection logs) when performing a transfer that consists of many thousands of files, especially small files. To further reduce resource use, go to the menu and choose **Tools > Global Options.** Select **Transfer > Events**, and select **Remove successful transfers from the queue automatically**.

LOG FILE SETTINGS

To access the log file settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **General**.
3. Select **Log Files**.

Options

- **Log path**
  - Browse or type a path to the folder where you want to save your log files.

- **Delete saved logs every**...
  - Select this to automatically delete log files at time intervals you choose. Choose to delete files after a specified number of days, hours, or minutes.
  - Clear this to keep all log files, or to delete them in other ways.

- **Delete error logs after quitting the Transfer Engine**
  - Select this to automatically delete error logs when the Transfer Engine shuts down.
  - Clear this to keep error logs after the Transfer Engine shuts down.
- **Delete logs of successful transfers immediately after completion**
  - Select this to automatically delete the associated logs immediately after a successful task is finished.
  - Clear this to keep the associated logs after a successful task is finished.
- **Record/Display time stamps in logs**
  - Select this to include the date and time in all log files.
  - Clear this to exclude the date and time from all log files.

Note:
This option consumes additional system resources due to insertion of time/date stamp at each log event.

- **Delete all logs**
  - Select this to remove all log files from your log folder that are currently unused.

Note:
Logs for active sessions are not automatically deleted.

- **Delete listing cache**
  - Select this to remove all remote file and folder listings CuteFTP has saved on your computer for offline browsing.

- **Thumbnail settings**

Choose from:

  - **Retain images in thumbnail cache** - thumbnails stored in the cache are not deleted when you exit CuteFTP or the Transfer Engine.
  - **Delete images in thumbnail cache** - the thumbnail cache is emptied when the Transfer Engine is exited.
  - **Delete images older than value specified** - Thumbnails are stored for the time specified by the thumbnail cache expiration drop down menu.
  - **Delete thumbnail cache** - Empty the cache at any time by selecting this button.

Connection settings

CONNECTION OPTIONS

To display the Connection window

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Connection**.

Options

- **Global max connections/transfers**
  - Choose the number of simultaneous connections you will allow from CuteFTP.
    - On a Windows 95/98/ME computer you can choose up to 40 connections.
    - On a Windows NT/2k/XP computer you can choose up to 200 connections, but CuteFTP will warn you that more than 20 connections may compromise system performance.
    - Connections include transfers, browse sessions, and every single thread in a Multi-Part transfer.
- **Per site max connections/transfers**
  - Same as Global max but on a per site basis.

Note:
If you choose to allow only one connection per site, you must transfer files over the browse session only (you can navigate or transfer, but not both at the same time). This may be needed in situations where the server does not allow more than one connection from the same user. If the server allows more than one connection, then it is recommended that you use a value greater than one, for example 5. That way you can transfer files and at the same time continue to navigate the site.

- **Connection retry attempts**
  - Choose the number of times CuteFTP tries to connect to a site before giving up. You can set CuteFTP to try connecting up to 1,000 times.
- **Delay between retries in seconds**
  - Choose how long CuteFTP waits before attempting a new connection after a failed connection. Choose up to 1,000 seconds (about 17 minutes).

Note:
CuteFTP does not automatically retry after fatal errors, such as a host unreachable (invalid IP address or host name), or upon receiving a socket 1006n error, which usually has to do with the client not being able to connect to the host for various reasons (firewall blocking, network error, host is down, etc.).

- **Connection timeout in seconds:**
  - Choose how long CuteFTP waits for an unresponsive server before it stops attempting a new connection. Choose up to 1,000 seconds (about 17 minutes).
- **E-mail address for anonymous logins**
  - Enter the address you want to send to servers that require an e-mail address for anonymous logins. By default, CuteFTP sends a simulated e-mail address.
- **Display the server's welcome message**
  - Select this to display a pop-up window with information from the server when initial connections are successful.

- Clear this check box to skip the server's successful connection message.

- **Send the FEAT command after login to determine feature support**
  - Select this to ask the server for a list of extended features it supports.
  - Clear this check box stop sending the FEAT command, the server won't respond with a list of supported features.

Note:
FEAT is used to determine whether extended features are supported, such as MDTM, MLST, and others. Not all servers support the FEAT command.

- **Send QUIT command before disconnecting**
  - Select this check box to always send the QUIT command from CuteFTP no matter how you choose to disconnect.
  - Clear this check box to disconnect without sending the QUIT command.
- **Enable port mapping using UPnP**
  - Select this to use the UPnP NAT interface (available in Windows XP) to provide proper port-mapping when connecting securely from behind a NAT/firewall using PORT mode (rather than PASV, due to the remote host also being behind a NAT/firewall). Without UPnP, you would need to manually set the port range in the client and also enable and forward them in the NAT/firewall device.

Note:
You can choose **Max connections**, **Delay between retries**, and **Retry attempts** for individual sites. Select the site to configure from **Site Manager**, then from the menu, choose **File > Properties**, and select the **Options** tab.

- **Assign PORT mode IP address and port range**
  - Use this to specify an IP address and define a port range when establishing connections using PORT mode.

  Typically, this setting should be turned off, but if you are using SSL and are having difficulty negotiating a firewall, it may help to specify your public FTP address here to enable CuteFTP to successfully negotiate with the firewall or NAT. Optionally, you can specify a range of ports for issuing port commands.

Tip:
Use local port range when you have a defined limited number of open ports on your firewall.

SMART KEEP ALIVE OPTIONS

You can set CuteFTP to maintain an active connection to a server even if you aren't currently sending commands or making transfers, by using Smart Keep Alive (SKA). SKA sends commands at random intervals to the FTP server, maintaining an active connection.

To access Smart Keep Alive options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Smart Keep Alive**.

Options

- **Enable Smart Keep Alive (SKA)**
  - Select this to automatically send commands to a server to keep a connection open, and to make all the SKA options available.
  - Clear this check box to disable SKA and to disable all SKA options.
- **Start SKA *n* seconds after the last command**
  - Set how soon SKA begins after transfers and other activities have stopped. You can start SKA immediately or after 1,000 seconds (just under 17 minutes).
- **Maintain SKA for *n* minutes**
  - Choose how long SKA sends commands to keep a connection open. You can set this for as little as one minute, and as much as 1,000 minutes (just under 17 hours).
- **Send command at random intervals between *n* and *n* seconds**
  - For after SKA has started, choose the shortest and longest time CuteFTP will wait before sending a command to keep the connection open. You can choose to set times as low as zero seconds up to 1,000 seconds (just under 17 minutes). Between 15 and 60 seconds are the defaults.
- **Commands**
  - Select **Add** to include new FTP commands in the list of possible commands sent to keep a connection open. CuteFTP uses the listed commands.
  - Choose **Remove** after selecting a command in the list to exclude that command from the list of commands sent to keep a connection open.
- **If disconnected, auto-reconnect within *n* seconds**
  - Select this to have CuteFTP attempt a new connection with a server that has closed a connection. Choose a delay time between zero and 100 seconds.
  - Clear this check box if you don't want CuteFTP to automatically attempt a new connection.

INTERNET CONNECTION (DUN/LAN) SETTINGS

DUN stands for Dial-Up Networking. LAN stands for Local Area Network. If you connect to the Internet with a regular phone modem you are using Dial-Up networking. If you connect to the Internet with a cable modem, DSL modem, or through a computer network, you are using a Local Area Network.

To access Dial-up and Network settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Connection**.
3. Select **DUN/LAN**.

Connection Type

- **Connect to the Internet using a LAN**
  - Select this if you connect to the Internet with a Cable modem, DSL modem or through a computer network.
- **Connect to the Internet using a modem**
  - Select this if you connect to the Internet using a modem over regular telephone lines.

Dial-Up options

- **Use the following Dial-Up Networking connection**
  - Select the dial-up connection you want CuteFTP to use. The list includes every dial-up connection on the local computer that is available in MS Windows®. Many computers list only one.
- **Show authentication window (requires user input)**
  - Select this to display the dial-up connection user name and password whenever CuteFTP attempts a connection.
  - Clear this check box to stop the display of the dial-up connection user name and password when CuteFTP attempts a connection.
- **Show error prompts (requires user interaction)**
  - Select this to display messages when an error occurs with the dial-up connection.
  - Clear this check box to stop the display of error messages from the dial-up connection.
- **Disconnect from the Internet upon program exit**
  - Select this to automatically disconnect from the Internet when CuteFTP or the Transfer Engine shuts down.
  - Clear this check box to keep the Internet connection active after CuteFTP or the Transfer Engine shuts down.
- **Number of times to attempt connection**
  - Choose how many times CuteFTP tries to establish a dial-up connection to the Internet after a connection fails. You can choose from 0 to 1000 attempts.
- **Number of seconds to wait between attempts**
  - Choose how long in seconds CuteFTP waits between attempts to establish a dial-up connection to the Internet. You can choose from 0 to 1000 seconds (1000 seconds equals almost 17 minutes).

SOCKS 4 AND 5 CONNECTION SETTINGS

SOCKS is a network proxy protocol that allows transparent Internet connections across a firewall.

To access SOCKS 4 and 5 settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.

3. Select **SOCKS4 & 5**.

- **Use the highlighted SOCKS server when connecting**
  - Select this to connect to an FTP site through a SOCKS server.
  - Clear this check box to connect to an FTP site without connecting through a SOCKS server.
- **SOCKS**
  - Select a host name in the list to make FTP connections through that specific server.
  - Select **Add**, then enter the server name in the **Host name** box to include a server in the **SOCKS** list.
  - Select **Remove** button to delete a highlighted server from the **SOCKS** list.
- **Host name**
  - Select **Add**, then enter the name of a new SOCKS server.

OR

  - Select a server from the **SOCKS** list, and edit the name.
- **Port**
  - Enter the port for the server selected in the **SOCKS** list. The default port for SOCKS servers is 1080.

OR

  - Select a server in the **SOCKS** list, and edit the port number.
- **Use Authentication**
  - Select this to have CuteFTP automatically send the proper user name and password for the SOCKS server when first connecting.
  - Clear this check box if you don't have a SOCKS user name and password, or if you choose to enter them manually upon connection.
- **User name**
  - Enter or edit the user name for the highlighted SOCKS server.
- **Password**
  - Enter or edit the password for the highlighted SOCKS server.
- **SOCKS type**
  - Select either **SOCKS4** or **SOCKS5** to match the highlighted SOCKS server.

Tip:
SOCKS4 servers do not require usernames and passwords. If you need a username and password to connect to the server, it is a SOCKS5 server.

Note:
Contact your system or network administrator for the proper Host name, Port, User name, Password and SOCKS type.

PROXY CONNECTION SETTINGS

To access proxy server settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **Proxy Server**.

Configuration notes

Use network connection proxy settings from Internet Explorer

- Select this and CuteFTP uses the proxy settings already set in Internet Explorer to connect to FTP sites.
- Clear this check box to connect to an FTP site without connecting through a proxy server, or to connect using proxy settings listed in CuteFTP.

Note:
With this option, CuteFTP attempts to detect Internet Explorer's proxy settings, including proxy.pac proxy script files. This is only available for Windows XP SP1, W2K Pro SP3, W2K Server SP3, W2K Server 2003 using WinHTTP dll. If that fails, WinInet dll is queried, which is supported by XP, 2K PRO, NT4, ME, 98, and 95.

- **Use the highlighted proxy when connecting**
  - Select this to connect to an FTP site through a proxy server.
  - Clear this check box to connect to an FTP site without connecting through a proxy server, or to connect using settings from Internet Explorer.
- **Proxies**
  - Select a host name in the list to make FTP connections through that specific server.
  - Select **Add** and enter the server name in the **Host name** box to include a server in the **Proxies** list.
  - Select **Remove** to delete the selected server from the **Proxies** list.
- **Host name**
  - Select **Add** and enter the name of a new proxy server.

  OR
  - Select a server in the **Proxies** list and edit the name.
- **Port**
  - Type the proper port for the server selected in the **Proxies** list. The default port for proxy servers is 8000.
- **User name**

- Enter or edit the user name for the selected proxy server.

- **Password**
  - Enter or edit the password for the selected proxy server.
- **Proxy type**
  - Select either **FTP** or **HTTP** to match the protocol the selected proxy server supports.

- **Advanced** is for selection of advanced authentication methods. Choose:
  - **USER user @site** if your proxy server requires the USER command followed by your user name and the site name to allow connection with a remote site. You can change the @ symbol if a different separator is required by your proxy server.
  - **SITE site** if your proxy server requires the SITE command followed by the address of the remote FTP site to allow a connection.
  - **USER with logon** if your proxy server requires the USER command followed by a user name and password to allow connection with a remote site.
  - **USER/PASS/ACCT** if your proxy server requires all three commands before allowing a connection to a remote site.
  - **OPEN site** if your proxy server requires the OPEN command followed by the site name before allowing connection to the site.
  - **Custom** if your proxy server requires a login sequence different from those above.

To create a custom authentication method for a proxy server

1. Enter a command.
2. Follow the command with a space and the appropriate variable. Choose from:.
   - %host% - sends the host name you typed in the Proxy server options window.
   - %user% - sends the user name you typed in the Proxy server options window.
   - %pass% - sends the password you typed in the Proxy server options window.
   - %port% - sends the port number you typed in the Proxy server options window.
   - %fire_pass% - sends the password you typed in the Proxy server options window as authentication for the firewall.
   - %fire_user% - sends the user name you typed in the Proxy server options window as authentication for the firewall.
3. Enter each variable with percent signs before and after.
4. Press **Enter** to separate commands.
5. Enter any other commands and variables, separating commands with a line break.
6. Select **OK**.

Note:
Contact your system administrator for the proper Host name, Port, User name, Password, and proxy type, as well as any required advanced authentication methods.

Security settings

SECURITY SETTINGS

To display the Security window

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Security**.

Configuration Notes

- **Remove Site Manager passwords upon program exit**
  - Select this to prevent storing any site passwords in the Site Manager file at all. CuteFTP asks for the site password for each connection attempt.
  - Clear this check box to allow CuteFTP to store site passwords in the Site Manager file (default behavior). When passwords are saved, you won't have to enter them again when connecting to a site.

Note:
Not saving passwords at all is useful in shared system environments, where CuteFTP is likely being used by multiple users on the same physical machine.

- **Site Manager path:**
  - Leave this to keep the Site Manager file in its default location.
  - Enter a new path or browse to a new path to move your Site Manager to a different location on your computer or network.
- **Encrypt contents of Site Manager**
  - Select this to secure the Site Manager. You must supply a password every time you start CuteFTP.
  - Clear this check box, and CuteFTP starts without requiring a password. Site Manager and all its sites are available.

Tip:
When this option is not used (default) CuteFTP does use mild encryption with a system generated password to protect your Site Manager's contents. It is highly recommended that you select **Encrypt the contents of the Site Manager**, as it protects the contents of the Site Manager with **strong encryption**, using a password you supply.

- **Change Password**

  - This becomes available when you select **Encrypt contents of Site Manager**. Select it to open a dialog to set and confirm a password for protecting the contents of the Site Manager.
- **Remove Queue file passwords upon program exit**
  - Select this to remove passwords from queued items. Next time you start CuteFTP, you will be prompted for a password to complete the transfer.
  - Clear this check box to allow passwords to be sent automatically for queued items.
- **Remove Quick Connect and Connect to URL history upon program exit**
  - Select this to erase any URLS and remove all sites from the Quick Connect drop-down, when CuteFTP is shut down.
  - Clear this check box to keep URLS and to keep a list of sites in the Quick Connect drop-down list even when CuteFTP is closed.

SSH2 SECURITY SETTINGS

To access the SSH2 security settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSH2 Security**.

Cipher

- Select the check box for every cipher (encryption algorithm) you want available for SSH2 connections. See Learning about SSH2 for an explanation of the algorithms.
- Clear the check box for any cipher you do not want available for SSH2 connections.
- Move your preferred cipher to the top of the list by highlighting it and clicking the up arrow outside the list.
- Move your least preferred Cipher to the bottom of the list by highlighting it and clicking the down arrow outside the list.

MAC

- Select the check box for every MAC (Message Authentication Code) you want available for SSH2 connections. See Learning about SSH2 for an explanation of MACs.
- Clear the check box for any MAC you do not want available for SSH2 connections.
- Move your preferred MAC to the top of the list by highlighting it and clicking the up arrow outside the list.
- Move your least preferred MAC to the bottom of the list by highlighting it and clicking the down arrow outside the list.

Use data compression

- Select this check box to compress transfers if the server will allow it.
- Clear this check box to refuse transfer compression.

Use password authentication

- Select this check box to sign on to SSH2 servers with a password (the entered in your Site Manager).
- Clear this check box to only use public/private key authentication. You can only clear this box if you have already selected the **Use public key authentication** check box.

Use public key authentication

- Select this to sign on to SSH2 servers with a certificate (identity file).
- Clear this check box to only sign on to SSH2 servers with a password.
- **Public Key Path**
  - Browse or type the location of the Public Key file on your local machine.
- **Private Key Path**
  - Browse or type the location of the Private Key file on your local machine.
- **Use Passphrase**
  - Type the appropriate passphrase for decrypting the key listed in **Private Key Path**.
- **Confirm Passphrase**
  - Type the same passphrase again for the key listed in **Private Key Path**.

> **Tip:**
> The private key password is stored in the registry using strong encryption. For added security, leave the passphrase fields blank. CuteFTP prompts you for the private key password when necessary.

- **Create identity file**
  - Select this to create a new Public/Private key pair. For instructions on key pair creation see Creating SSH2 key pairs.
- **Trusted identity list**
  - Select this to see a list of public keys that you have accepted as valid in the **Certificate Manager**.
  - **Certificate manager**
    - Select **Import** to add a public key to the trusted list.
    - Select **Export** to send a highlighted public key to a location or program.
    - Select **Remove** to delete a highlighted public key from the trusted list.

> **Note:**
> SSH2 connections require at least one authentication method but may require more than one. Check with your server administrator when in doubt.
> To use public key authentication, you must send your public key to the server administrator before making an SSH2 connection.

SSL SECURITY SETTINGS

To access the SSL security settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Security**.
3. Select **SSL Security**.

Configuration Notes

- **Use SSL certificate when authenticating**
  - Select this to send a certificate to SSL servers for authentication.
  - Clear this check box to send no certificate to SSL servers for authentication.

> **Note:**
> Your server may not require client certificates. If they do require client certificates, you may need to send your self-signed or 3rd-party signed certificate to the server administrator so the admin can add it to the server's Trusted List.

- **Certificate**
  - Browse to or type the location of an SSL certificate file on your local machine. The file should have a .crt extension.
- **Private key**
  - Browse to or type the location of an SSL private key file on your local machine. The key file should have a .key extension.
- **Use passphrase**
  - Enter the appropriate passphrase for the certificate listed in the **Certificate** field.
- **Confirm Passphrase**
  - Enter the appropriate passphrase again for the certificate listed.

> **Tip:**
> The private key password is stored in the registry using strong encryption. For added security, leave the passphrase fields blank. CuteFTP prompts you for the private key password when necessary.

- **Create Certificate**
  - Select this to create a new SSL certificate with a signing request and a key for the certificate. For more information on creating SSL certificates see Creating your own SSL certificates.
- **Trusted Certificates**
  - Displays a list of certificates that you have accepted as valid. For more information on trusted certificates see Accepting server SSL certificates and Importing SSL certificates.
- **Reuse cached session for data connection (required by some servers)**
  - Select this to allow new transfers without encrypting a new data channel.
  - Clear this check box to require encryption of every session for every new transfer.
- **Accept certificates in Windows Trusted Root Certificate Authority store**
  - Select this to automatically trust certificates already accepted by your system, even if they have not been added to your Trusted list.

- Clear this check box to require all certificates to be added to the CuteFTP Trusted list before allowing connections.

- **Warn when switching from secure to non-secure pages (CuteFTP Professional Only)**
  - Select this to see a pop-up message when, after connecting to a secure HTTP site, you click a folder or link that is not secure.
  - Clear this check box to be able to link from secure HTTP sites to HTTP sites that are not secure without seeing any pop-up messages.

Transfer settings

TRANSFER SETTINGS

To access transfer settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Transfer**.

Transfer method

- Choose **Auto-detect** to have CuteFTP decide the transfer method based on the file and server type.
- Choose **ASCII** to transfer text files, web pages or other text type files.
- Choose **Binary** to transfer pictures, programs or executable files.

Note:
Binary files cannot be transferred in ASCII mode, but ASCII files can be transferred in Binary mode.

Data mode:

- Choose **Auto** and CuteFTP makes connections in PASV mode. If the PASV connection fails, CuteFTP attempts to connect in PORT mode automatically.
- **PASV** helps avoid conflicts with security systems. PASV support is necessary for some firewalls and routers, because with PASV, the client opens the connection to an IP Address and port that the server supplies.
- Choose **PORT** when connections or transfer attempts fail in PASV mode, or when you receive data socket errors. When an FTP client connects using PORT, the server opens a connection to an IP Address and port that the client supplies.
- **EPRT** is an extesnion of PORT that allows the server to give an Ipv6 address to the client for negotiation through NAT firewalls.
- **EPSV** is an extesnion of PASV that allows the server to give an Ipv6 address to the client for negotiation through NAT firewalls.
- Used as an alternative to PASV or PORT commands for the traversal of NAT firewalls for secure (FTPS) connections. Read RFC 2428 for more details. Common Add EPRT and EPSV to the existing Data mode drop-down (combo) located under Global Options | Transfer pane. Note that each site in the site manager is currently

able to either inherit global settings for Data Mode or define their own. Therefore the EPRT and EPSV choices must also be available on a site basis (Site Properties | Type page).

Note:
If you connect in PORT mode your session becomes vulnerable to "Port theft," where a third party can interfere with transfers.

Mode Z:

Mode Z compression compresses files on the fly as you transfer, saving bandwidth and improving transfer times. This feature is turned on by default, and is used whenever you connect to a server that supports Mode Z.

- Select **Apply Mode Z compression to ASCII transfers when possible** to use Mode Z.

Transfer files over the browse session

This feature controls the sessions that files are transferred on.

If **Allow transfers to occur over the existing (browse) session** is:

- **Checked**, files transfer over new and existing sessions. CuteFTP uses the browse session and if available, additional connections. For example, If you define a per site max limit of five connections and then transfer five files, CuteFTP checks the browse connection first to see if it is busy, and if not busy, transfers the 1st file over the browse connection. The subsequent four files are transferred over four additional sessions. CuteFTP automatically adjusts for allowed connections (both from the client and server perspective) and whether or not it can use the browse session.
- **Checked + CTRL key**, files transfer over the exisiting session only. To use this, select the files you want to transfer, then press and hold the Ctrl key while you drag and drop the files into the destination folder. This forces CuteFTP to transfer all the files on the existing session. Transferring files using only the currently logged in session can reduce overhead in certain situations. For example, a transfer of a large number of small HTML files can often be done much faster if limited to the current connection rather than performing a full TCP/IP connection and FTP login (and possibly FEAT/CWD/LIST) sequence first
- **Cleared (unchecked)**, files transfer over new sessions only. Use this option if your server allows multiple connections, is quick to respond, and you want to navigate the site while downloading. All transfers are forced over new connections, freeing up the browse session so you can continue to navigate. The only time may pose a problem is when the server either refuses to allow multiple connections or is slow to log into.

When selecting MAX in a multi-part transfer, use *n* threads

- Select the number of parts to split a file into when a max multi-part transfer is requested.

Global bandwidth limit

Throttles the bandwidth of all sessions on CuteFTP. To set a bandwidth throttle, adjust **Global bandwidth limit:** to the number of kilobytes per second you want to limit CuteFTP to. If set to 0 (the default), there is no throttling.

Reconnect and resume in n seconds, if nothing is received

- Select the time that CuteFTP waits to try again after an interrupted or failed download. Select a time between 0 and 1,000 seconds (about 17 minutes).

Roll back (retry at byte offset) n bytes when resuming transfers

- Select the number of bytes prior to the transfer failure CuteFTP resends when attempting to finish an interrupted transfer. Select between 0 and 65536 bytes.

Send REST command prior to APPE when resuming a transfer

- Select this check box to send the **REST** (Restart) command to resume a transfer, before sending the **APPE** (Append) command.
- Clear this check box to send the **APPE** (Append) command to resume a transfer without first sending the **REST** (Restart) command.

Receive and send buffers

Default setting for both send and receive is 65536 bytes. It is unlikely you will ever need to adjust these settings, but if you have problems with dropped transfers, you can use them to fine tune transfers over high latency or lossy connections like those over satellite links or with legacy CDMA wireless connections. For more, see Tweak the send and receive buffers in Improving Slow Transfers.

Tip:
Most of these controls are intended for **advanced users** only. For example, the REST/APPE sequence is only intended for problem servers that don't support the proper resume sequence. Transfer type should only be changed when you need to force files to transfer a certain way. The data port mode should only be changed if you are having problems establishing a data connection (on LIST or RETR for example). Limiting the local port range can have adverse affects when transferring many small files over a narrow range of ports.

EVENT SETTINGS

After all transfers have finished

- Choose **Do Nothing** to keep the connection and CuteFTP open after all transfers are complete.
- Choose **Disconnect from site** to close the connection but keep CuteFTP open after all transfers are complete.
- Choose **Disconnect and close program** to close all connections an close CuteFTP after all transfers are complete.

- Choose **Disconnect from Internet** to close a dial-up connection automatically after all transfers are complete.
- Choose **Shut Down Computer** to close all connections, close CuteFTP, close a dial-up connection and shut down the computer after all transfers are complete.
- Choose **Log Off** to automatically log the current user off the computer after all transfers are complete.

Verify file integrity when transferring from / to GlobalSCAPE secure FTP Server

- Select this to have CuteFTP Professional and the server double check binary files to be certain the files downloaded completely and correctly.
- Clear this check box to stop binary file checking.

Remove successful transfer items from the queue automatically

- Select this to erase items from the queue after they have transferred.
- Clear this check box to keep items in the queue even after they have transferred.

Tip:
As old items build up in the queue it can consume large amounts of memory. Selecting this option avoids that problem.

Close the file transfer thread n seconds after the transfer is finished

- Select the time that CuteFTP will wait to close the data connection after a transfer is complete. Leaving data connections open allows more transfers to use the same connection, avoiding the need to open new connections. Select a time between 0 and 1,000 seconds.

Preserve remote time stamp for downloaded files

- Select this to keep a downloaded file's time stamp the same on the local machine as it is on the server.
- Clear this check box to allow the local machine to give downloaded files a new time stamp.

Preserve the local time stamp for uploaded files if the server allows MDTM

- Select this to keep an uploaded file's time stamp the same on the server as it is on the local machine.
- Clear this check box to allow the server to give uploaded files a new time stamp.

Note:
Using MDTM to **modify** a remote file's time stamp is not endorsed by the IETF Extensions to FTP working group or any formal RFC. However it is supported by quite a few FTP servers. CuteFTP will attempt the command when requested and report any errors to the log (if received).

RENAME RULES SETTINGS

You can set CuteFTP to automatically change the name of files it transfers.

To access the Rename Rules options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options.**
2. Expand **Transfer**.
3. Select **Rename Rules.**

Apply auto-rename rules to transfers

- Select this check box and CuteFTP will change the names of transferred files with names that are listed in the large box of the Rename Rules window.
- Clear this check box and CuteFTP will not rename any files.

To create an auto-rename rule

1. Type the original file name in the text box on the upper left.
2. Type the desired new file name in the text box on the upper right.
3. Click **Add**.

To remove an auto-rename rule

1. In the large list box, highlight the rule you want to delete.
2. Click **Remove**.

Configuration notes

- The rules are case sensitive.
- These rules will apply to all uploads, downloads, and site-to-site transfers.
- You can create rules with wildcard masks to change just the extension of several files of the same type. For example, if your .jpg files need the extension in upper case (.JPG) on the server, create the rule:

Rename from	Rename to
*.jpg	*.JPG

- You can create a rule to strip extensions from file names. For instance if you want to transfer a file called "index.htm" as simply "index" add this rule to your list:

Rename from	Rename to
index.htm	index.*

ASCII TRANSFER SETTINGS

Select, by file extension, file types that should always be transferred in ASCII mode.

To access the ASCII transfer options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Transfer**.
3. Select **ASCII Types**.

ASCII Extensions

- Type the file extension for files you want to transfer in ASCII mode in this box.
- Select **Add** to add the extension to the list.
- Select **Remove** to delete the selected extension from the list.

> **Note:**
> You can specify a Transfer type from the main menu (see Transferring files in binary or ASCII mode). You can also specify a Transfer type for an individual site by highlighting the site in the **Site Manager**, clicking the **Type** tab, and choosing from the **Transfer** list. **Auto** is the default transfer type, and sends files in the mode specified for each file's extension. All extensions are sent in binary mode unless they are listed in the **ASCII Extensions** list.

Navigation settings

SMART OVERWRITE SETTINGS

When you try to transfer a file to a destination with a file of the same name, use Smart Overwrite to determine the proper action to take. Smart overwrite settings apply to both uploads and downloads. Some servers are case sensitive. Such servers will not recognize files names as identical if the letter case of the two file names does not match.

To access the Smart Overwrite settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Transfer**.
3. Select **Smart Overwrite**.

For matching files

- **Prompt**: CuteFTP displays a window asking you to overwrite or skip the file in the destination folder that has the same name as the file you are transferring.
- **Overwrite**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP replaces the destination file with the transferred file.
- **Skip**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP does not transfer the file and leave the destination file as it is.
- **Rename**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP asks you for a new file name for the transferred file.
- **Resume**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP treats the destination file as an incomplete transfer. If the destination file is already a complete file, the transferred file replaces the destination file.
- **Numerate**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP renames the transferred file to 'Copy of file.txt'. If the same transfer occurs again CuteFTP renames the transferred file to 'Copy (2) of file.txt'
- **Use Rules**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring, CuteFTP uses the rules you define in **Overwrite Rules**.

Ignore Zero byte files

- Select this and CuteFTP ignores any files with a size of zero bytes.
- Clear this check box and CuteFTP applies all rules and settings to all files regardless of size.

For matching folders

- **Prompt**: CuteFTP displays a window asking what you want to do to a folder in the destination folder that has the same name as the folder you are transferring.
- **Replace All**: If a folder in the destination folder has the same name as the folder you are transferring CuteFTP replaces every destination file with matching names with files in the transferred folder.
- **Use Rules**: If a folder in the destination folder has the same name as the folder you are transferring, CuteFTP uses the rules you define in the **Overwrite Rules** window to determine how to handle all files with matching names.

Configure Rules

Configure Rules defines the rules you want CuteFTP to use when two files have the same name. You must select **Use rules** to enable these options.

- **If destination file date is**
    - **newer** replaces a file if it has a time stamp more recent than the file you are transferring.
    - **no matter** replaces any file regardless of when it was created in relation to the file you are transferring. Select this option if you don't want to replace files based on when they were created.
    - **older** replaces a file only if it has a time stamp further in the past than the file you are transferring.
    - **the same** replaces a file if it has the same time stamp as the file you are transferring.

    - **different** replace a file if it has a time stamp that is older or newer than the file you are transferring.
- **and size is**
    - **larger** replaces a file if it is larger than the file you are transferring.
    - **no matter** replaces a file regardless of its size. Select this option if you don't want to replace files based on their size in relation to the file you are transferring.
    - **smaller** replaces a file if it is smaller than the file you are transferring.
    - **the same** replaces a file if it is same size as the file you are transferring.
    - **different** replaces a file if it is larger or smaller than the file you are transferring.
- **during**
    - **any transfer** replaces files whether you are uploading or downloading.
    - **download** replace only the files on the local machine with files transferred from a remote site.
    - **site to site transfer** replaces files when with the same name when transferring from one remote site to another.
    - **upload** replace only the files on the remote site with files transferred from the local machine.
- **then**
    - **overwrite** completes the transfer by replacing the file that's already in the destination folder.
    - **numerate** completes the transfer by renaming the transferred file with "Copy (*n*) of..." added before the name.
    - **resume** treats the transfer as an attempt to continue an interrupted transfer.
    - **show prompt** pauses the transfer and display the message that asks the user which action to take.
    - **skip** cancels the transfer and leave the original file in the destination folder.
- Select **Add >>** places the rule into the list. If you are using rules, CuteFTP checks every rule in the list during all transfers.
- Select **<< Remove** to delete a rule you have highlighted in the list and CuteFTP will no longer use the rule when it encounters two files of the same name.
- Select **Defaults** to delete every rule from the list.

For more information, see Smart Overwrite Example.

Prompt timeout action

Defines the action CuteFTP takes if no rules apply, or if you enable a timeout value. When you select the **Timeout in *n* seconds** check box, a prompt appears, but after waiting the defined amount of time, CuteFTP takes one of the following actions:

- **Overwrite**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP replaces the destination file with the transferred file.

- **Skip**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP does not transfer the file and leave the destination file as it is.
- **Rename**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP asks you for a new file name for the transferred file.
- **Resume**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP treats the destination file as an incomplete transfer. If the destination file is already a complete file, the transferred file replaces the destination file.
- **Numerate**: If a file in the destination folder has the same name as the file you are transferring CuteFTP renames the transferred file to 'Copy of file.txt'. If the same transfer occurs again CuteFTP renames the transferred file to 'Copy (2) of file.txt'.

Resend LIST command as necessary

- The LIST command retrieves file details and determine similarities and differences between a transferring file and destination file with the same name.
- Clear this check box and CuteFTP does NOT use the LIST command.

Use SIZE and MDTM to gather precise details

- The SIZE command retrieves file size and the MDTM command retrieves file modification time to determine similarities and differences between a transferring file and destination file with the same name.
- Clear this check box and CuteFTP will NOT use the SIZE and MDTM command.

Compare using XCRC and overwrite, skip, or resume accordingly

- Use file integrity checking (cyclical redundancy checksums) to determine overwrite, skip or resume status based on similarities and differences between a source and destination file with the same name.

Note:
This feature only works with GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Servers.

Note:
The resulting action of Compare using XCRC... takes precedence over your standard overwrite action settings.

NAVIGATION SETTINGS

To access the navigation settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Navigation**.

Event Handling

- **When adding items to the queue**, choose:
  - **Transfer immediately** to start transfer of the queued item as soon as it is dropped in the queue.
  - **Suspend** to place the item in the queue, but to hold the transfer.

  - **Schedule** to display the scheduling window when an item is placed in the queue.
- **When dragging an item to the local pane**, choose:
  - **Transfer to current folder** to send the dragged item to the folder currently listed in the **Local Drives** pane.
  - **Transfer to default folder** to send the dragged item to the default transfer folder listed in General Settings**.**
  - **Add to queue & suspend** to place the dragged item in the queue, but hold the transfer.
- **When double-clicking an item**, choose:
  - **Transfer immediately** to send the item to the displayed remote site or the default download folder.
  - **Add to queue & suspend** to place the double-clicked item in the queue, but hold the transfer.
  - **Launch in viewer** to open the item in the **File Viewer** program chosen in **Helper Applications**.
  - **Execute** to run the item if it is a program.
  - **Edit** to open the item in the **File Editor** program chosen in **Helper Applications**.

More options

- **Link the remote and its associated local pane when working with multiple sites**
  - Ties the local and remote panes to each other. If you have more than one remote pane open and you switch between the remote panes, the last path in the local pane used for that remote pane is recalled.
  - Clear this checkbox to retain the same path in the local pane regardless of the remote pane selected.
- **Auto-refresh the remote pane after an upload**
  - Update the remote folder's listing after every upload to that folder.
  - Clear this check box to stop sending LIST requests to a remote site after every upload.
- **Switch from the Site Manager to the Local Drives Pane upon connection**
  - Automatically displays the **Local Drives** pane when a connection is made.
  - Clear this check box to leave the **Site Manager** displayed when a connection is made.
- **Switch from the Local Pane to the Site Manager upon closing all connections**
  - Automatically displays the **Site Manager** when all connections are closed.
  - Clear this check box to leave the **Site Manager** hidden when all connections are closed.
- **Use the logical parent (not physical parent) on CDUP command**
  - Returns to the folder you just linked from when clicking the **Move up directory** button.
  - Clear this check box to change to the actual folder the item resides in, and not a folder with a link to the item, when clicking the **Move up directory** button.

TOC FILE SETTINGS

You may connect with remote folders that have Table of Contents (TOC) files. TOC files contain detailed information about the folder. In long and complicated directories the TOC files can be quite large. If you download very large TOC files, they may interfere with CuteFTP's performance or operation.

To access the TOC File settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** dialog appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Navigation**.
3. Select **TOC Files**.

Settings

- **Load TOC Files**
  - Automatically downloads Table of Contents files whenever connecting to a remote folder.
  - Clear this check box to never download Table of Contents files.
- **If the TOC file size exceeds *n* Kbytes, then prompt before loading.**
  - Choose the maximum size TOC file CuteFTP downloads without prompting for permission. Choose a size between 1 and 1,000 kilobytes.
- **TOC include masks**
  - Enter file names or extensions that CuteFTP should consider as TOC files. You can use wildcard masks.
  - **Add** includes your entry in the list of **TOC include masks**.
  - **Remove** deletes the selected item from the **TOC include masks** list.
- **TOC exclude masks**
  - Enter file names or extensions that CuteFTP should NOT consider as TOC files. You can use wildcard masks.
  - **Add** includes your entry in the list of **TOC exclude masks**.
  - **Remove** deletes the selected item from the **TOC exclude masks** list.

Note:
The **TOC include masks** and the **TOC exclude masks** act as a double filter to help CuteFTP determine whether or not a file is a TOC file. For example, if you put "Index*" in the **TOC include masks** and *.html in the **TOC exclude masks**, a file named "Index.txt" would be considered a TOC file, but a file named "Index.html" would not.

SYMBOLIC LINK OPTIONS

You can determine how CuteFTP handles Symbolic Links. Symbolic Links are similar to shortcuts, they point to items in other locations on a server.

To access the Link options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Navigation**.
3. Select **Links**.

Server side link resolution

- **Attempt link resolution using LIST-L command**
  - Sends the LIST-L command instead of LIST to display folder contents. LIST-L attempts to list the actual file or folder rather than the link that points to the file or folder.
  - Clear this check box to send just the LIST command to display folder contents and leave links in the list.

> **Note:**
> Servers are not always able to resolve links using LIST-L.

- **Client side link resolution**
  - **Try to determine the link's target type by its extension** - CuteFTP tries to tell if the link points to a file or a folder. CuteFTP treats the link as if it were the item it references.
  - **Always assume the link is a file (don't attempt to resolve)** - treats symbolic links as files. If you download the link it displays as a file with size 0 in your local folder.

> **Tip:**
> This option is useful when you download large directories or folders with many files and subfolders.

  - **Always assume the link is a folder (don't attempt to resolve)** - treats symbolic links as folders that you can double-click to see folder contents.

> **Note:**
> CuteFTP attempts to show the actual path of a file or folder link in the Remote pane, under the **Name** column. For example, a link to a file called archive.zip might show .3/networks/bbs_info/archive.zip

TOLERANCE OPTIONS

You may encounter some servers that treat PASV mode and links differently. You can choose from the following options to help when connecting with these servers.

To access the Tolerance options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**. The **Global Options** window appears.
2. In the left pane, expand **Navigation**.
3. Select **Tolerance**.

Configuration notes

- **Use correct timing of PASV mode command**
  - This option works with most FTP servers. See RFC compliant PASV mode example.
  - Clear this check box to connect with a server when having difficulty connecting in PASV mode.
- **Use PWD to determine current folder**
  - Uses the 'Print Working Directory' command to determine what remote folder is currently open on the server.
  - Clear this check box and CuteFTP attempts to determine the current remote folder based upon the relative location from the root login folder. Uncheck this box only if your server does not support PWD.
- **Use absolute paths for DELE, RETR, and STOR commands**
  - Sends the absolute path to the file to complete delete, download, or upload file operations. For example: "RETR /pub/cuteftp/cuteftp.exe".
  - Clear this check box if your server doesn't support absolute path names for these commands. CuteFTP sends the relative path to the file instead. For example: "RETR cuteftp.exe".
- **Use absolute paths for the LIST command**
  - Uses the complete absolute path to retrieve the listings for a folder. For example: "LIST /pub/cuteftp".
  - Clear this check box if your server doesn't support absolute path names for the LIST command. CuteFTP uses the relative file path to retrieve the listings for a folder. For example: "LIST".
- **Use NLST instead of LIST (retrieves an abbreviated listing)**
  - Retrieves a list of just file names for each folder. The list does not include time stamps, file size, or other details.
  - Clear this check box to use the LIST command and retrieve a list with details for each file and folder.
- **Treat 5xx errors as 4xx errors during login**
  - Continues login attempts if the server returns permanent errors (5xx) inappropriately, such as when the server is full or busy.

    Warning:
    Selecting this option may result in being banned from a server. CuteFTP will repeatedly try to connect to the server (according to retry and retry delay settings). If the retry delay period is set too low, these repeated attempts may end up being considered "hammering," and the server administrator or service may ban your accounts.

  - Clear this check box to always accept permanent errors, to stop further connection attempts, and to avoid being banned for hammering.

Display settings

DISPLAY SETTINGS

To access CuteFTP display settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Display**.

Configuration Notes

Select the toolbars to display

- Select the toolbars you want to display by clicking the checkbox next to the toolbars.
- Click the name of the toolbar to select it.
- With a toolbar in the list highlighted, click the **Customize selected toolbar** button to add or remove buttons on the toolbar.

Customize selected toolbar - add a button

1. Select a button from the **Available Toolbar buttons** column.
2. Click **Add**, or double-click the button.
3. Click **Close** to accept changes, **Reset** to cancel changes.

Customize selected toolbar - remove a button

1. Select a button from the **Current Toolbar buttons** column.
2. Click **Remove**, or double-click the button.
3. Click **Close** to accept changes, **Reset** to cancel changes.

Customize - move a button

1. Select a button from the **Current Toolbar buttons** column.
2. Click **Move Up** to move a button one icon to the left on the toolbar.
- Click **Move Down** to move the button one icon to the right on the toolbar.
3. Click **Close** to accept changes, **Reset** to cancel changes.

Note:
Reset does not cancel changes made when the **Customize Toolbar** dialog box was opened and closed previously.

Show large toolbar icons

- Select this to display the large (32x32 pixel) set of main toolbar icons.
- Clear this to display the small (16x16 pixel) set of main toolbar icons.

Auto-hide Quick Connect bar

- Select this to cause the Quick Connect bar to hide upon connection to a site.
- Clear this to cause the Quick Connect bar to stay in view upon connection to a site..

Display menu icons

- Select this to display small icons in the menus next to commonly used menu items.

Highlight active pane

- Select this to display a thin blue line at the top of the window pane that currently has the focus.

Show grid lines on all view panes

- Select this check box to display borders between rows and columns in the queue window, and in the Local and Remote panes when in **Detail** view.
- Clear this check box to hide all borders between rows and columns.

Display File Sizes in

- Adaptive causes CuteFTP to decide when to show files in Bytes, KB, MB, or GB.
- Kilobytes causes CuteFTP to always display values in KB.

Local, Remote, Queue Pane Font

Allows you to adjust the font type and size display of all text in the Local Drives tab, Queue pane, and Remote pane.

Smart Sorting

- **Use standard lexicographic sorting for alphanumeric file names**

Select this option to sort file lists by the value of each individual digit.

- **Use Smart Sorting for alphanumeric file names**

Select this option to sort file lists by whole number value.

Tip:
Smart Sorting always lists file names with smaller numbers first. For example, A2 comes before A12. David Wincelberg developed Smart Sorting. CuteFTP uses it by default.
Standard Lexicographic sorting lists file names using one character at a time reading from left to right. For example, A12 comes before A2. MS Windows uses Standard Lexicographic sorting by default.

Smart Sorting	Standard sorting
FileA1.ext	FileA1.ext
FileA2.ext	FileA12.ext
FileA6.ext	FileA2.ext
FileA9.ext	FileA20.ext
FileA12.ext	FileA21.ext
FileA20.ext	FileA6.ext
FileA21.ext	FileA9.ext

SOUND OPTIONS

To access CuteFTP sound options

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Display**.
3. Select **Sounds**.

Configuration Notes

- **Add sounds**
  - Select this to hear audio cues for certain events in CuteFTP and to edit the sounds associated with events.
  - Clear this check box to silence all sounds from CuteFTP and disable sound association editing.
- **Events**

  The **Event** column lists possible CuteFTP events. The **File** column lists the sound file that plays for each event. If there is nothing in the **File** column, the event to the left does not cause a sound. Select an event in the list to add or change the sound associated with it.
- **File**
  - Browse or type the path to a sound that you want. To remove a sound from an event, select it, then choose **(None).**

> **Tip:**
> With a sound listed in the File entry box you can preview the sound by clicking the speaker button.

PROMPT SETTINGS

To access CuteFTP prompt settings

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Display**.
3. Select **Prompts**.

Confirmations

- **Confirm when deleting from local drive**
  - A confirmation prompt appears before each delete and asks if you are sure you want to delete the item before removing it.
  - Clear this check box and when you try to delete an item from the Local Drives pane, it will be remove without a confirmation prompt.
  - **Confirm when deleting from remote drive**
  - Select this check box and when you try to delete an item from a remote folder, CuteFTP asks if you are sure you want to delete the item before removing it.

- Clear this check box and when you try to delete an item from a remote folder, it will be removed immediately.
- **Confirm when deleting from queue**
- Select this check box and when you try to delete an item from the queue, CuteFTP will ask if you are sure you want to delete the item before removing it.
- Clear this check box and when you try to delete an item from the queue, it will be removed immediately.
- **Confirm when closing a remote pane**
- Select this check box and when you try to close a window for an active connection, CuteFTP will ask if you want to disconnect first.
- Clear this check box and when you try to close a window for an active connection, the window and connection will be closed immediately.

Prompts

- **Show prompt upon error** Select this to display a dialog upon certain server errors (5xx range).
- **Show login prompt if connection fails or is missing data** Select this to display a dialog when the site password is rejected or missing.
- **Show prompt when new tasks are scheduled** Select this to display a dialog notifying you that a task was scheduled and added to the queue.
- **Show prompt when new tasks are started** Select this to display a dialog notifying you that a scheduled task has started to run.
- **Show prompt after successful decompression** Select this to display a dialog notifying you that the archive was expanded successfully.
- **Show warning when transferring binary files in ASCII mode** Select this to display a dialog warning you when you may be transferring a certain file type in the wrong mode.
- **Show connection progress prompts** Select this to display a connection status dialog when connecting. If the log view is unavailable when connecting, this dialog will show you if there may be a problem with the connection. This is disabled by default.

LANGUAGE SETTINGS

CuteFTP's resources are independent from the main application executable and are contained in a file called Default.lng. You can modify the text and dialogs displayed in the program or localize the entire resources in order to use CuteFTP in your own language.

To modify the resource file using Microsoft Visual Studio

1. Locate the **default.lng** file in the CuteFTP installation folder.
2. Make a copy of this file in the same folder and rename it with a dll extension. For example: custom.dll
3. Launch **Visual Studio.**
4. Choose **File > Open** from the menu.

5. In the **Look in** field of the Open dialog, locate your **CuteFTP installation folder**.
6. In the **Files of type field**, select **Executable Files** (.exe; .dll; .ocx).
7. In the **Open** as field, select **Resources**.
8. Select the resource dll file you just created and select **Open**.
9. In Visual Studio's main editor window, select one of the resource folders shown, such as **String Table**.
10. Modify the resource strings. Take special care to not modify dynamic string place holders (i.e. %d or %s) or escape sequences (\n). The & sign represents a mnemonic and must remain intact.
11. Once you've completed your modifications, save your changes by choosing **File > Save** from the main menu.
12. Close Visual Studio.
13. Locate the resource dll you just modified.
14. Change its extension back to lng. For example: **custom.lng**
15. Launch CuteFTP.
16. Choose **Tools > Global Options > Display > Language** from the menu.
17. Select the new language file from the left-hand pane of the Language settings dialog.
18. Select OK, close the Global Options dialog and **restart** CuteFTP.

The resource changes take place throughout the program. You can also modify the resource file using other third party tools, such as the free utility called **Resource Hacker** (search for it using Google) used for modifying resource files.

To modify the resource file using Resource Hacker

Follow the same steps as above with the following exceptions:

1. When opening the **dll** file in Resource Hacker, select **Win32 PE files** as the **Files of type**.
2. As you edit the resources of each node in the resource tree, make sure to select **COMPILE SCRIPT** after making changes to that node.

Tip:
Make sure you save your changes from the **File > Save** menu once finished. Resource Hacker automatically makes a backup of the original dll file. All other steps are the same, including the naming of the file back to something.lng and the steps on how to load it in CuteFTP.

Note:
CuteFTP's License Agreement contains specific language prohibiting reverse engineering, decompiling or otherwise modifying the application or any one of its components. You are permitted to modify the resource file for **your own personal use on your own system only.** You are not allowed to distribute your modified resource file to others. We are considering a program in the near future that will permit users to localize their resources and submit them to GlobalSCAPE for redistribution to others. If you are interested in taking part in any localization efforts and

feel that you are able to provide timely, **high-quality** translations of the CuteFTP resources file, please contact the CuteFTP Product Manager.

Helper Applications

HELPER APPLICATIONS

You can choose the programs to use for viewing and editing documents from within CuteFTP.

To access Helper Applications

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Helper Applications**.

File Viewer

- **Use the integrated HTML editor to view files**
  - Select this check box to open files in CuteFTP's built-in HTML editor when clicking a file and going to **File > View**.
  - Clear this check box to open files in a program you choose in the long box below the check box.
- **File viewer**
  - Browse or type the path to the program you want to use when clicking a file and going to **File > View**.

File Editor

- **Use the integrated HTML editor to edit files (recommended)**
  - Select this check box to open files in CuteFTP's built-in HTML editor when clicking a file and going to **File > Edit**.
  - Clear this check box to edit files in a program you choose in the long box below the check box.
- **File editor**
  - Browse or type the path to the program you want to use when clicking a file and going to **File > Edit**.

Note:
If you choose a third party editor with which to edit remote files, CuteFTP launches the editor and then monitor the folder containing the temporary file being modified. Once you've made your changes in the editor and saved them, CuteFTP will upload the changes back to the server.

Tip:
If you prefer to use a direct editor over a WYSIWYG editor but find the integrated editor too limited in functionality, consider trying out our

CuteHTML Pro tool. It is powerful editor for working with HTML, ASP, PHP, Perl, and many more file types.

Note:
If you open an HTML file in the built-in HTML editor using **File > View** you can still edit and save the file.

HTML EDITOR SETTINGS

To view or edit HTML Editor settings

1. From the menu, select **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and select **HTML Editor**.

Display editor using Full Screen view

- The editor can display in full screen or as a tab in the CuteFTP window. By default, CuteFTP displays the the HTML editor in tab view mode. To change to full screen view, select **Display editor using Full-Screen view**.

Enable word wrap

- Select this check box and the HTML editor will add line breaks at the right end of long lines, so that you can see entire lines of Code without scrolling to the left or right.
- Clear this check box and the HTML editor will use line breaks where you add them. You might have to scroll to the right to see the ends of longer lines of code.

Prefix each line with line numbers

- Select this check box to display numbers at the beginning of each line of code. If word wrap is enabled, the numbers will only display after line breaks you have entered. The line numbers are not saved as part of the document.
- Clear this check box and no line numbers will be displayed.

Allow editing beyond the end of line

This check box is only available if **Enable word wrap** is cleared.

- Select this check box to allow the cursor to keep moving to the right after the last character in a line.
- Clear this check box to force the cursor to return to the left end of the following line after the last character in a line.

Note:
If you disable **Allow editing beyond the end of line**, you can still add more characters after the right-most character.

Tab size

Enter the number of spaces you want the cursor to move to the right when you hit the **Tab** key. You can choose from 1 to 32.

Edit new document template

Select **Edit new document template** to open a window where you can change the HTML code and text that is generated automatically when you start a new document in the HTML editor. When you have finished making changes, click the **CLOSE** button.

Choose font for editor

Select **Choose font for editor** to open a dialog where you can choose the type, style and size of the font displayed in the HTML Editor. When you have made your selections click **OK**, or if you don't want to change the font click **Cancel**.

CHOOSING DISPLAY COLORS FOR THE HTML EDITOR

To specify display colors for HTML tags and Perl scripts

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Colors**.
4. Select a color from the list for each tag set and for Perl script components.
5. Select **Apply** or **OK**.

To specify background and standard font colors for the HTML editor

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Colors**.
4. To use the system default colors, select the **Use system settings** check box and skip to step 7.

OR

- To choose different colors, clear the **Use system settings** check box and continue with step 5.

5. Select a color for the background from the **Background** list.
6. Select a color for the font from the **System font** list.
7. Select **Apply** or **OK**.

CHOOSING THE FOLDER FOR HTML CODE SNIPPETS AND JAVA SCRIPTS

To specify the folder for code snippets and previewing HTML documents from CuteFTP

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Folders**.
4. In the **Code snippets** box, browse or type the path to the folder where you want to store code snippets.
5. In the **Java scripts** box, browse or type the path to the folder where you want to store Java scripts.

6. Select **OK**.

CHOOSING TO WRITE HTML FOR A SPECIFIC BROWSER

The HTML Editor can automatically provide suggestions for HTML tags that work for specific browsers. The HTML Editor offers HTML tag choices in drop down boxes. These are called tag tips.

To show tag tips

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. Select the **Show tag tips** check box.

   Or

   - Clear the **Show tag tips** check box to keep tag tips hidden.
5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

The tags shown in the tag-tip drop down boxes are controlled by the primary and secondary browsers you choose.

To display only tag tips that apply to certain browsers

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. Select your first browser choice from the top list, **First primary browser tags**.
5. Select your second browser choice from the next list, **Second primary browser tags**.
6. Select your third browser choice from the list **Secondary browser tags**.
7. Select a color for tag tips that apply only to the third browser choice in **Secondary browser color**.
8. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

When more than one primary browser is selected, the tag tips in the drop down that are common to both browsers display in black. This enables you to code for two types of browsers, such as Netscape and IE, or two versions of the same browser.

Example

If you want to code for IE 5.0, but conserve backwards compatibility with 4.0, then choose 5.0 and 4.0 as the two primary browsers. Tags in common to both are available in the tag tips box. Newer 5.0 tags that didn't exist in 4.0 don't even appear, which helps you code your HTML without having to worry about which tags may be supported or not.

Choosing a secondary browser lets you see ALL the tags for a certain browser in a different color. In the example above, if you wanted to code for IE 4.0 and 5.0 but add certain tags from OPERA, you would select OPERA as the secondary browser. When you saw a colored tag in the tag tips box, you would know it was an OPERA tag, which may or may not work in IE or Netscape. This enables you to decide whether or not to insert the particular tag.

To choose how long the tag tips take to appear

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. In the **Tag tips delay in milliseconds** box, enter a time for the HTML editor to wait before showing tag tips.
5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

To capitalize all tag tips

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. Select the **Capitalize tag tips** check box.

   Or

- Clear the **Capitalize tag tips** check box to leave tag tips in lower case.

5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

11

Integrated HTML Editor

HTML Editor overview

CuteFTP has a built in HTML editor. You can edit HTML and other ASCII (text) based documents.

The built-in editor was added primarily for remote file editing. This enables Webmasters and users to select a document on the remote site, load it in the editor, make quick changes, and then save the document back to the remote location.

TO OPEN THE HTML EDITOR

- From the menu, choose **File > New > HTML Document**.

The editor has the following features:

- **Auto-tag** completion feature for HTML tags
- **Auto validation** using code-for-browser settings
- Customizable color-coded HTML and PERL tags
- Color and RBG to HEX converter
- Unlimited **Undo** and **Redo** commands
- **Document weight** feature
- **Word wrap** toggle
- **Smart Anchor** and **Image** dialogs that remember commonly used data
- Sophisticated word/paragraph **Find** and **Replace** feature
- Dynamic view in browser function
- Highly customizable **Java script** support for commonly used scripts
- Handy and customizable **Code Snippet** feature that allows you to save and reuse code
- Customizable default template for new HTML docs
- **Line numbering** option for better code management
- Easy to use **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Font** selector for those commonly used tags
- Optional end of line or extended editing cursor placement
- Color printing for easy document comprehension/layout
- **View unsaved changes in browser** feature for fast assessment of proposed changes

- Plus most standard text editor features

Editor Menu Tools

SEARCH AND REPLACE

You can search and replace characters, words, sentences or entire paragraphs with the integrated editor's powerful search and replace tool.

- From the menu, choose **Edit > Find / Replace.**

1. Enter the word(s) you wish to search for or change in the **Search for** field.
2. Enter the replacement word(s) or phrase in the **Replace with** field.
3. Select whether to search only the open document or all open documents by checking the appropriate field under **Where to search** in the lower left part of the screen.
4. Select the open box next to **Match case** if you want the system to match capitalization. (A check mark in the box indicates matching will occur.)
5. Select **Find**.
6. The first match is located and replaced. To continue to search and replace throughout the document, select **Find Next** for each instance (or hit **F3** on your keyboard)

WARNING:
Because it replaces all occurrences, be very careful when choosing the replace option. For example, if you want to change all occurrences of 'one' to '1', it will also change words like 'everyone' to 'every1'.

Tip:
When entering text into the **Search for** or **Replace with** fields, use **Ctrl+Enter** to enter a line break.

COLOR TO HEX

The Color to HEX utility eliminates the need to know HEX codes. It will also provide HTML values if desired. Find the desired color in the color grid and the integrated editor will insert it into your open document at the cursor location.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Color to HEX**.
2. Select a basic color or choose one from the color wheel.
3. If you desired to use HTML safe colors only, select **Paste browse safe**.
4. Choose **OK** to insert the HEX code for the selected color into your document.

DOCUMENT DATA

The Document Data screen contains information about the document currently being edited.

Text Size	The total size of text contained in the document, shown in kilobytes.
Image Size	The total size of images contained in the document, shown in kilobytes.
Total Size	Total of text and images size, shown in kilobytes.
Weight	Number of seconds your page will take to load based on size and modem speed. Use the down arrow at the end of this field to adjust modem speed.
Images	A list of all images appearing in the document.
Anchors	A list of all anchors appearing in the document.

Working with HTML documents

CREATING A NEW HTML DOCUMENT

You can create new HTML documents within the CuteFTP interface.

To create a new HTML document

1. From the menu, choose **File > New > HTML Document**. A new HTML document opens. You may begin coding.

SAVING HTML DOCUMENTS

To save an HTML document

1. Make sure the file you want to save is visible in the main window.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Save**. The file is saved.

> **Note:**
> If the file has never been saved before, CuteFTP opens the **Save As** dialog box.

To save an HTML document with a new name and/or location

1. Make sure the file you want to save is visible in the main window.

2. From the menu, choose **File > Save As**. The **Save As** dialog box appears.
3. Choose a name and location for the file.
4. Select **Save**.

To save all open HTML documents at the same time

1. From the menu, select **File > Save All**. All open documents are saved. If you have not saved all of them previously, the **Save As** dialog box appears for each new file.
2. Choose a name and location for each new file.
3. Select **Save** for each new file.

> **Note:**
> Each open HTML document has a tab with its name on it that appears near the lower left of the document. Each time you make a change to an HTML document the name on the tab appears in red until you save or close the document.

OPENING AN HTML DOCUMENT

You can open HTML documents for editing within CuteFTP.

To open an HTML document

1. From the menu, choose **File > Open**.
2. Browse to the folder containing the document.
3. Select the document.
4. Select **Open**.

EDITING AN HTML DOCUMENT ON A REMOTE SITE

To edit HTML documents on a remote site

1. Connect to a remote server.
2. Highlight an HTML document in the Remote pane.
3. On the menu bar, click **File > Edit**.
4. The document will be downloaded and opened in the built-in HTML editor.
5. Make your changes to the document.
6. On the menu bar, click **File > Save**. The saved document will be uploaded to the remote server.

PRINTING AN HTML DOCUMENT

To print a document

1. Open a document in the HTML editor.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Print**.

Warning:
The document prints as it appears in the HTML editor, NOT as it appears in a browser.

To see a print preview

1. Open a document in the HTML editor.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Print Preview**.
3. From the preview screen, select **Print** to send the document to the printer.
4. Select **Zoom In** to increase magnification or **Two Page** to display facing pages.

To change the printer setup (such as the printer, paper size or orientation)

1. Open a document in the HTML editor.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Print Setup**.
3. Make any desired changes.
4. Selct **OK** to accept, or **Cancel** to make no changes to the **Print Setup**.

Note:
While a document is printing, a printer icon appears next to the clock on the taskbar. When this icon disappears, your entire document has been sent to the printer.

CLOSING AN HTML DOCUMENT

To close an HTML document

1. Make sure the document you want to close is visible in the main window
2. From the menu, choose **File > Close**.
3. If your document has unsaved changes you will be asked if you want to save the changes. Choose one of the following:
   - **Yes** to save the document.
   - **No** to exit without saving the document or changes.
   - **Cancel** to return to the document without saving the document or changes.

PREVIEWING AN HTML DOCUMENT IN A BROWSER

You can check to see how an HTML document will look as a Web page, from within CuteFTP.

To preview an HTML document in a browser

1. Open an HTML document in CuteFTP.
2. Click anywhere in the document.
3. From the menu, choose **Tools > View in Browser**.

To close the preview

- Select the **Close** button in the upper right of the browser window.

OPENING A DOCUMENT IN THE HTML EDITOR IN A FRAME, RATHER THAN IN A FULL WINDOW

The HTML editor opens to either a frame or a full window depending on the display state of the **Remote Pane**. If the **Remote Pane** is in a window, then the HTML editor will open to a window state. Conversely, if the **Remote Pane** is maximized, the HTML editor opens to a maximized state.

Working with HTML

LEARNING HTML

Within HTML you use tags to define how text, pictures, and other objects should appear in a Web browser. The topics within **Working with HTML** discuss many of the tags you can use to create Web pages. You use most tags in pairs - a start and ending tag. You can visit various web sites that explain HTML and how to use it.

To learn more about HTML

- See the NCSA Beginner's guide to HTML.

OR

- Getting started with HTML from W3C by Dave Raggett.

STARTING HTML DOCUMENTS

To start an HTML document

All HTML documents should have the following codes:

- **Document Type** <HTML></HTML> (beginning and end of file)
- **Head** <HEAD></HEAD> (after the HTML tag, but before the BODY tags, includes descriptive info, such as title)
- **Title** <TITLE></TITLE> (must be in header)
- **Body** <BODY></BODY> (after the HEAD tags, bulk of the page)

Example

```
<HTML>
    <HEAD>
        <TITLE>Your page title</TITLE>
    </HEAD>
    <BODY>
        The main part of your Web page for public viewing.
    </BODY>
```

```
</HTML>
```

SETTING HTML DOCUMENT STRUCTURE

Use the following tags to set the overall structure of your Web pages.

Heading <H?></H?> (the spec. defines 6 levels)
Align Heading <H? ALIGN=LEFT|CENTER|RIGHT></H?>
Division <DIV></DIV>
Align Division <DIV ALIGN=LEFT|RIGHT|CENTER|JUSTIFY></DIV>
Block Quote <BLOCKQUOTE></BLOCKQUOTE> (usually indented)
Emphasis <EM></EM> (usually displayed as italic)
Strong Emphasis <STRONG></STRONG> (usually displayed as bold)
Citation <CITE></CITE> (usually italics)
Code <CODE></CODE> (for source code listings)
Sample Output <SAMP></SAMP>
Keyboard Input <KBD></KBD>
Variable <VAR></VAR>
Definition <DFN></DFN> (not widely implemented)
Author's Address <ADDRESS></ADDRESS>
Large Font Size <BIG></BIG>
Small Font Size <SMALL></SMALL>

FORMATTING HTML PAGES

Use these HTML tags to alter the appearance and format of text.

Bold <B></B>
Italic <I></I>
N3.0b Underline <U></U> (not widely implemented yet)
Strikeout <STRIKE></STRIKE> (not widely implemented yet)
N3.0b Strikeout <S></S> (not widely implemented yet)
Subscript
Superscript
Typewriter <TT></TT> (displays in a monospaced font)
Preformatted <PRE></PRE> (display text spacing as-is)
Width <PRE WIDTH=?></PRE> (in characters)
Center <CENTER></CENTER> (for both text and images)
N1.0 Blinking <BLINK></BLINK>
Font Size <FONT SIZE=?></FONT> (ranges from 1-7)

Change Font Size <FONT SIZE="+|-?"></FONT>
N1.0 Base Font Size <BASEFONT SIZE=?> (from 1-7; default is 3)
Font Color <FONT COLOR="#$$$$$$"></FONT>
N3.0b Select Font <FONT FACE=""></FONT>
N3.0b Multi-Column <MULTICOL COLS=?></MULTICOL>
N3.0b Column Gutter <MULTICOL GUTTER=?></MULTICOL>
N3.0b Column Width <MULTICOL WIDTH=?></MULTICOL>
N3.0b Spacer <SPACER>
N3.0b Spacer Type <SPACER TYPE=horizontal|vertical|block>
N3.0b Size <SPACER SIZE=?>
N3.0b Dimensions <SPACER WIDTH=? HEIGHT=?>
N3.0b Alignment <SPACER ALIGN=left|right|center>

ADDING LINKS AND GRAPHICS TO HTML DOCUMENTS

Use the following tags to add hyperlinks, pictures, and other graphics to your Web pages.

Link Something <A HREF="URL"></A>
Link to Target <A HREF="URL#"></A> (if in another document)
<A HREF="#"></A> (if in current document)
N2.0 Target Window <A HREF="URL" TARGET=""></A>
Define Target <A NAME=""></A>
Display Image <IMG SRC="URL">
Alignment <IMG SRC="URL" ALIGN=TOP|BOTTOM|MIDDLE|LEFT|RIGHT>
Alternate <IMG SRC="URL" ALT=""> (if image not displayed)
Dimensions <IMG SRC="URL" WIDTH=? HEIGHT=?> (in pixels)
Border <IMG SRC="URL" BORDER=?> (in pixels)
Runaround Space <IMG SRC="URL" HSPACE=? VSPACE=?> (in pixels)
N1.0 Low-Res Proxy <IMG SRC="URL" LOWSRC="URL">
Imagemap <IMG SRC="URL" ISMAP> (requires a script)
Imagemap <IMG SRC="URL" USEMAP="URL">
Map <MAP NAME=""></MAP> (describes the map)
Section <AREA SHAPE="RECT" COORDS="„„" HREF="URL"|NOHREF>
N1.1 Client Pull <META HTTP-EQUIV="Refresh" CONTENT="?; URL=URL">
N2.0 Embed Object <EMBED SRC="URL"> (insert object into page)
N2.0 Object Size <EMBED SRC="URL" WIDTH=? HEIGHT=?>

ADDING DIVIDERS TO HTML DOCUMENTS

Use the following tags to add breaks to your Web pages.

Paragraph <P></P> (closing tag often unnecessary)
    Align Text <P ALIGN=LEFT|CENTER|RIGHT></P>

Line Break
 (a single carriage return)
    Clear Text Wrap <BR CLEAR=LEFT|RIGHT|ALL>

Horizontal Rule <HR>
    Alignment <HR ALIGN=LEFT|RIGHT|CENTER>
    Thickness <HR SIZE=?> (in pixels)
    Width <HR WIDTH=?> (in pixels)
    Width Percent <HR WIDTH="%"> (as a percentage of page width)
    Solid Line <HR NOSHADE> (without the 3D cutout look)

N1.0 No Break <NOBR></NOBR> (prevents line breaks)
N1.0 Word Break <WBR> (where to break a line if needed)

CREATING LISTS IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use these tags to create bulleted, numbered, and other lists.

Unordered List <UL><LI></UL> (<LI> before each list item)
    Compact <UL COMPACT></UL>
    Bullet Type <UL TYPE=DISC|CIRCLE|SQUARE> (for the whole list)
        <LI TYPE=DISC|CIRCLE|SQUARE> (this & subsequent)

Ordered List <OL><LI></OL> (<LI> before each list item)
    Compact <OL COMPACT></OL>
    Numbering Type <OL TYPE=A|a|I|i|1> (for the whole list)
        <LI TYPE=A|a|I|i|1> (this & subsequent)
    Starting Number <OL START=?> (for the whole list)
        <LI VALUE=?> (this & subsequent)

Definition List <DL><DT><DD></DL> (<DT>=term, <DD>=definition)
    Compact <DL COMPACT></DL>

Menu List <MENU><LI></MENU> (<LI> before each list item)

Compact <MENU COMPACT></MENU>

Directory List <DIR><LI></DIR> (<LI> before each list item)
Compact <DIR COMPACT></DIR>

USING BACKGROUNDS AND COLORS IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use these tags to set colors, and add colored backgrounds to your Web pages.

Tiled Bkground <BODY BACKGROUND="URL">
Bkground Color <BODY BGCOLOR="#$$$$$$"> (order is red/green/blue)
Text Color <BODY TEXT="#$$$$$$">
Link Color <BODY LINK="#$$$$$$">
Visited Link <BODY VLINK="#$$$$$$">
Active Link <BODY ALINK="#$$$$$$">

Note:
The dollar signs represent a hexadecimal code. The first two digits represent the amount of red, the middle two digits represent the amount of green and the last two digits represent the amount of blue in your color. Replace the dollar signs with any number from **0** to **9**, or any letter from **A** to **F**. The numbers are additive, and the letters are higher than the numbers, so **#000000** is black, **#777777** is gray, **#FFFFFF** is white, **#FF0000** is pure red, **#00FF00** is pure green, and **#0000FF** is pure blue.

USING SPECIAL CHARACTERS IN HTML DOCUMENTS

You may need to use certain symbols that require special codes in HTML to appear properly in Web pages. Use these codes to place special symbols in your Web pages.

< <
> >
& &
" "
Registered TM ®
Registered TM ®
Copyright ©
Copyright ©
Non-Breaking Space

Special Character &?; (where ? is the ISO 8859-1 code)

> **Note:**
> The letters in the character strings must all be in the same letter case.

INCLUDING FORMS IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use the following tags to add different input fields to your Web pages.

Define Form <FORM ACTION="URL" METHOD=GET|POST></FORM>
N2.0 File Upload <FORM ENCTYPE="multipart/form-data></FORM>
Checked? <INPUT CHECKED> (checkboxes and radio boxes)

Input Field <INPUT TYPE="TEXT|PASSWORD|CHECKBOX|RADIO|
IMAGE|HIDDEN|SUBMIT|RESET">
Field Name <INPUT NAME="">
Field Value <INPUT VALUE="">
Field Size <INPUT SIZE=?> (in characters)
Max Length <INPUT MAXLENGTH=?> (in characters)

Selection List <SELECT></SELECT>
Name of List <SELECT NAME=""></SELECT>
Number of Options <SELECT SIZE=?></SELECT>
Multiple Choice <SELECT MULTIPLE> (can select more than one)

Option <OPTION> (items that can be selected)
Default Option <OPTION SELECTED>

Input Box Size <TEXTAREA ROWS=? COLS=?></TEXTAREA>
Name of Box <TEXTAREA NAME=""></TEXTAREA>
N2.0 Wrap Text <TEXTAREA
WRAP=OFF|VIRTUAL|PHYSICAL></TEXTAREA>

> **Note:**
> Receiving input from a form generally requires a script on the server.

INCLUDING TABLES IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use these tags to add tables to your Web pages.

Define Table <TABLE></TABLE>

Table Border <TABLE BORDER></TABLE> (either on or off)
Table Border <TABLE BORDER=?></TABLE> (you can set the value)
Cell Spacing <TABLE CELLSPACING=?>
Cell Padding <TABLE CELLPADDING=?>
Desired Width <TABLE WIDTH=?> (in pixels)
Width Percent <TABLE WIDTH=%> (percentage of page)

Table Row <TR></TR>

Alignment <TR ALIGN=LEFT|RIGHT|CENTER
VALIGN=TOP|MIDDLE|BOTTOM>

Table Cell <TD></TD> (must appear within table rows)

Alignment <TD ALIGN=LEFT|RIGHT|CENTER
VALIGN=TOP|MIDDLE|BOTTOM>
No linebreaks <TD NOWRAP>
Columns to Span <TD COLSPAN=?>
Rows to Span <TD ROWSPAN=?>
N1.1 Desired Width <TD WIDTH=?> (in pixels)
N1.1 Width Percent <TD WIDTH="%"> (percentage of table)
N3.0b Cell Color <TD BGCOLOR="#$$$$$$">

Table Header <TH></TH> (same as data, except bold centered)

Alignment <TH ALIGN=LEFT|RIGHT|CENTER
VALIGN=TOP|MIDDLE|BOTTOM>
No Linebreaks <TH NOWRAP>
Columns to Span <TH COLSPAN=?>
Rows to Span <TH ROWSPAN=?>
N1.1 Desired Width <TH WIDTH=?> (in pixels)
N1.1 Width Percent <TH WIDTH="%"> (percentage of table)
N3.0b Cell Color <TH BGCOLOR="#$$$$$$">

Table Caption <CAPTION></CAPTION>

Alignment <CAPTION ALIGN=TOP|BOTTOM> (above/below table)

USING FRAMES IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use these tags to separate the Web browser into frames.

N2.0 Frame Document <FRAMESET></FRAMESET> (instead of <BODY>)
- **N2.0 Row Heights** <FRAMESET ROWS=„„></FRAMESET> (pixels or %)
- **N2.0 Row Heights** <FRAMESET ROWS=></FRAMESET> (= relative size)
- **N2.0 Column Widths** <FRAMESET COLS=„„></FRAMESET> (pixels or %)
- **N2.0 Column Widths** <FRAMESET COLS=></FRAMESET> (= relative size)

N3.0b Borders <FRAMESET FRAMEBORDER="yes|no">
- **N3.0b Border Width** <FRAMESET BORDER=?>
- **N3.0b Border Color** <FRAMESET BORDERCOLOR="#$$$$$$">

N2.0 Define Frame <FRAME> (contents of an individual frame)
- **N2.0 Display Document** <FRAME SRC="URL">
- **N2.0 Frame Name** <FRAME NAME=""|_blank|_self|_parent|_top>
- **N2.0 Margin Width** <FRAME MARGINWIDTH=?> (left and right margins)
- **N2.0 Margin Height** <FRAME MARGINHEIGHT=?> (top and bottom margins)
- **N2.0 Scrollbar?** <FRAME SCROLLING="YES|NO|AUTO">
- **N2.0 Not Resizable** <FRAME NORESIZE>
- **N3.0b Borders** <FRAME FRAMEBORDER="yes|no">
- **N3.0b Border Color** <FRAME BORDERCOLOR="#$$$$$$">

N2.0 Unframed Content <NOFRAMES></NOFRAMES> (for non-frames browsers)

INCLUDING JAVA IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use these tags to include Java scripts in your web pages.

Applet <APPLET></APPLET>
- **File Name** <APPLET CODE="">
- **Parameters** <APPLET PARAM NAME="">
- **Location** <APPLET CODEBASE="URL">
- **Identifier** <APPLET NAME=""> (for references)
- **Alternative Text** <APPLET ALT=""> (for non-Java browsers)
- **Alignment** <APPLET ALIGN="LEFT|RIGHT|CENTER">
- **Size** <APPLET WIDTH=? HEIGHT=?> (in pixels)
- **Spacing** <APPLET HSPACE=? VSPACE=?> (in pixels)

USING MISCELLANEOUS TAGS IN HTML DOCUMENTS

Use these tags for advanced Web functions.

Comment <!-- --> (not displayed by the browser)
Prologue <!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 3.2//EN">
Searchable <ISINDEX> (indicates a searchable index)
Prompt <ISINDEX PROMPT=""> (text to prompt input)
Send Search <A HREF="URL?"> (use a real question mark)
URL of This File <BASE HREF="URL"> (must be in header)
N2.0 Base Window Name <BASE TARGET="">(must be in header)
Relationship <LINK REV="" REL="" HREF="URL"> (in header)
Meta Information <META> (must be in header)
Style Sheets <STYLE></STYLE>
Scripts <SCRIPT></SCRIPT>

Customizing the Editor

Choosing the preview browser for HTML documents

When previewing HTML documents created or edited in CuteFTP's built-in editor you will see the documents in your computer's default browser, unless you specify a different browser.

To specify the browser for previewing HTML documents from CuteFTP

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Folders**.
4. If you want to use the computer's default browser, select **Preview using the default browser** and select **OK**.

Or, to choose a different browser:

4. Cllear **Preview using the default browser**.
5. In the **Browser path** box, browse or type the path to the program you want to use for previews of HTML.
6. Select **OK**.

Choosing the folder for HTML code snippets and Java scripts

To specify the folder for code snippets and previewing HTML documents from CuteFTP

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Folders**.
4. In the **Code snippets** box, browse or type the path to the folder where you want to store code snippets.

5. In the **Java scripts** box, browse or type the path to the folder where you want to store Java scripts.
6. Select **OK**.

CHOOSING TO WRITE HTML FOR A SPECIFIC BROWSER

The HTML Editor can automatically provide suggestions for HTML tags that work for specific browsers. The HTML Editor offers HTML tag choices in drop down boxes. These are called tag tips.

To show tag tips

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. Select the **Show tag tips** check box.

Or

- Clear the **Show tag tips** check box to keep tag tips hidden.

5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

The tags shown in the tag-tip drop down boxes are controlled by the primary and secondary browsers you choose.

To display only tag tips that apply to certain browsers

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. Select your first browser choice from the top list, **First primary browser tags**.
5. Select your second browser choice from the next list, **Second primary browser tags**.
6. Select your third browser choice from the list **Secondary browser tags**.
7. Select a color for tag tips that apply only to the third browser choice in **Secondary browser color**.
8. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

When more than one primary browser is selected, the tag tips in the drop down that are common to both browsers display in black. This enables you to code for two types of browsers, such as Netscape and IE, or two versions of the same browser.

Example

If you want to code for IE 5.0, but conserve backwards compatibility with 4.0, then choose 5.0 and 4.0 as the two primary browsers. Tags in common to both are available in the tag tips box. Newer 5.0 tags that didn't exist in 4.0 don't even appear, which helps you code your HTML without having to worry about which tags may be supported or not.

Choosing a secondary browser lets you see ALL the tags for a certain browser in a different color. In the example above, if you wanted to code for IE 4.0 and 5.0 but add certain tags from OPERA, you would select OPERA as the secondary browser. When you saw a colored

tag in the tag tips box, you would know it was an OPERA tag, which may or may not work in IE or Netscape. This enables you to decide whether or not to insert the particular tag.

To choose how long the tag tips take to appear

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. In the **Tag tips delay in milliseconds** box, enter a time for the HTML editor to wait before showing tag tips.
5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

To capitalize all tag tips

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Tag tips**.
4. Select the **Capitalize tag tips** check box.

Or

- Clear the **Capitalize tag tips** check box to leave tag tips in lower case.

5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

CHOOSING DISPLAY COLORS FOR THE HTML EDITOR

To specify display colors for HTML tags and Perl scripts

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Colors**.
4. Select a color from the list for each tag set and for Perl script components.
5. Select **Apply** or **OK**.

To specify background and standard font colors for the HTML editor

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications** and **HTML Editor**.
3. Select **Colors**.
4. To use the system default colors, select the **Use system settings** check box and skip to step 7.

OR

- To choose different colors, clear the **Use system settings** check box and continue with step 5.

5. Select a color for the background from the **Background** list.
6. Select a color for the font from the **System font** list.
7. Select **Apply** or **OK**.

CHOOSING OTHER HTML EDITOR SETTINGS

To keep text from running off the right end of the HTML editor screen

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications**.
3. Select **HTML Editor**.
4. Select the **Enable word wrap** check box.
- Clear the **Enable word wrap** check box to allow text to continue beyond the right edge.
5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

To display line numbers in HTML documents

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications**.
3. Select **HTML Editor**.
4. Select **Prefix each line with line numbers**.
- Clear **Prefix each line with line numbers** to hide line numbers.
5. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

To change the tags and text that appear in new HTML documents

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Helper Applications**.
3. Select **HTML Editor**.
4. Select **Edit new document template**.
5. Make changes in the **New document template** dialog.
6. Select **OK**.
7. Select **OK** or **Apply**.

12

Transfer Engine (SDK)

Transfer Engine Overview

ABOUT THE TRANSFER ENGINE

What is the Transfer Engine?

Built on a modular design platform, CuteFTP Professional's FTP **Transfer Engine (TE)** is completely independent of the main application's interface. You can control the TE through an industry standard COM (Component Object Model) interface using your favorite programming or scripting language, such as Visual Basic, Perl, ASP or JavaScript.

Unique to CuteFTP's TE are powerful encryption properties that dictate how the control and data channels communicate with the FTP server. From SSL to S/key or SSH2, the TE covers all your secure file transfer needs.

Benefits

The Transfer Engine:

- Is COM enabled
- Takes up minimal resources
- Handles background transfers
- Handles transfers outside the main interface
- Handles continuous folder synchronization events
- Can be used with a custom application or script to perform FTP related tasks.

Capabilities

The TE exposes most of the popular commands previously accessibly only through the application's main interface. Some of the actions you can accomplish using the TE:

- Login to an FTP server over a defined port
- Login using an encrypted authentication mechanism, such as OTP
- Login and transfer files using industry standard SSL/TLS (explicit & implicit modes supported)
- Login and transfer files using SSH2
- Login to sites through Firewalls, Socks or Proxy servers
- Transfer files one at a time or simultaneously

- Transfer files using multi-part transfers to increase throughput
- Transfer files from one remote site to another
- Transfer files using a wildcard mask
- Transfer files obtained from server-side links
- Perform folder synchronization tasks
- Check on an item's transfer status
- Much more

TRANSFER ENGINE (TE) INITIAL SETUP

As a typical COM Component, the TE Object must be registered as such on the target system. The TE automatically performs COM Registration if it has been manually executed (run once) prior to a script or application instantiating the TE Object.

To register the TE COM component

1. Launch CuteFTP Professional.
2. Close CuteFTP Professional. It should now be registered.

or

1. Locate the CuteFTP Professional program folder.
2. Double-click on the file named "ftpte.exe".
3. Exit the TE by right-clicking on the TE icon in your Systray.

> **Note:**
> In order to run script files, you must have the Windows Scripting Host (WSH). WSH relies on the Visual Basic Script and JavaScript engines provided with Internet Explorer 3.0 or later. WSH is also installed as a part of Windows 98, Windows 2000, and Internet Information Server 4.0.

RUNNING SCRIPTS

You can execute a script you have created directly in Windows, from the command line, from within CuteFTP's interface, or even as a scheduled task to be run with no user logged in.

To execute a script directly in windows

1. Launch CuteFTP Professional.
2. From the menu, choose **Tools > Macros & Scripting > Run**.
3. **Browse** to the script file you created (example, sample.vbs)
4. Click **Open** to launch the script.

The log and queue view in CuteFTP populates with session and transfer information.

To execute a script from the command line

1. From Windows, select **Start > Run**.

2. Enter **CMD** and hit **Enter**
3. **Navigate** to the script file
4. Enter the name of the file, then press **Enter**.

TE launches (the TE icon display in the system tray) and executes your script.

To execute a script directly in Windows

1. **Navigate** to the script file in Windows Explorer.
2. Double click the script file to launch it.

TE launches (the TE icon displays in the system tray) and executes your script.

CREATING SCRIPTS

You can interact with the TE directly from your own custom applications using common programming languages such as Visual Basic (VB) or in a scripting language supported by the Windows Scripting Host (WSH).

You can create a script from the development IDE of your choice, or you can create scripts from within CuteFTP Professional by selecting **Tools > Macros & Scripting > New Script**. CuteFTP will open a template script file in a document window.

To create a new script file, you need to have some familiarity with programming concepts and, ideally, some experience with VB or Java. For those of you who have neither, or just want a template to work from, load one of the predefined scripts included with CuteFTP or the TE and edit it to suit your needs. A few sample scripts are included in this document.

> **Tip:**
> If you don't have any programming experience, you can still create scripts using the session Record & Playback functionality in CuteFTP Professional.

Configuration notes

- Due to the wide range of scripts that CuteFTP is able to accommodate we are unable to offer technical support on individual scripts other than what is available in the help files and online Knowledge Base.
- If you are having trouble with your script, try to perform the desired action manually, using the CuteFTP GUI. If you cannot, then troubleshoot that problem first and then re-try your script.
- If you are able to perform the desired actions, and in the desired sequence when using the GUI, then the problem is not with CuteFTP or the FTP Server. The next thing to do is to troubleshoot your script line by line.
- Once the TE COM component is registered, you can create script files that will interface to it.
- Most of this document, including the various samples and glossary, are geared toward the novice programmer.

SCRIPT CONVENTIONS FOR EXAMPLES

The examples in this guide use the following conventions:

- maroon text is used for the syntax of a method or property
- **"Bold font in double quotes"** display parameters for a method or property
- red text indicates the method or property within an example script
- **'** (apostrophe or single quote mark) shows comments that do not affect the script
- [Square brackets] are a place for optional items. You should enter the option, but not the brackets. Here's an example:
  - The syntax says;

  String Object.Option("[option name]") = true | false
  - Enter it into a program like this:

  MySite.Option("FilterDirs")=False

METHODS, PROPERTIES AND WILDCARDS OVERVIEW

Use methods and properties to operate the Transfer Engine. Methods and properties are defined below.

Methods

A method can be described as a command or function that may accept arguments (parameters) and may return a certain type of value.

Example

```
Boolean Object.LocalExists(BSTR bstrName);
```

For this method, the type of the return value is Boolean. The command accepts an argument as a string value, here shown as BSTR (the type) and bstrName (a place holder for the argument).

In a program, you can execute a method and assign the return value to a variable all in one command.

Example

```
Exists = MySite.LocalExists "c:\temp\file.txt"
```

The argument "c:\temp\file.txt exists" is passed to the method LocalExists as a string (reason for the quotes). The variable Exists is then populated with a 1 or a 0 which is, in essence, true or false. You can then perform actions in your script based on those results.

Properties

A property is simply an attribute of a function (another word for method) or object internal to the TE framework. All properties have default values. Methods that rely on these properties will use default values unless you specify otherwise.

Most of the time, you can assign a value to a property or retrieve its value into a variable. You can set a property much like a local variable to your script.

Example

```
String Object.Protocol
```

The above property can accept a predefined set of string values or can be assigned to a variable to retrieve the currently selected value. The default in this case is "FTP".

You can assign a value to a property as follows:

Example

```
MySite.Protocol = "FTPS"
```

Upon subsequent connections, the TE will attempt to login using FTP over SSL, rather then via FTP, the default attribute for this property.

Wildcard masks

Wildcard masks are patterns of special characters used to filter file names. When a wildcard mask is matched against a file name, the two patterns are compared, letter-by-letter, from left to right until a mismatch occurs. If all the characters in both patterns compare positively, the file name matches the Wildcard Mask.

USING A SCRIPT TO CONNECT TO A REMOTE SITE

This script connects the TE to the public GlobalSCAPE FTP server and displays the words **Connected OK** in a message box after a successful connection.

```
Set MySite= CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Option ("ThrowError") = False
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com"
if cbool(MySite.Connect) then
MsgBox "Connected OK"
else
MsgBox MySite.ErrorDescription
end if
MySite.Disconnect
MySite.Close
```

Note:
Save this script using notepad or other text editor with a .vbs extension. Then simply double-click on the file to execute the script.

USING A SCRIPT TO DOWNLOAD

This script connects to the GlobalSCAPE FTP site and downloads a file called 'index.txt' to two local folders; c:/temp1 and c:/temp2.

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp.globalscape.com"
MySite.Connect 'Recommended: call connect first
'next line changes to a predetermined folder so I can use
a relative path in the download method
MySite.RemoteFolder = "/pub/cuteftp"
MySite.LocalFolder = "c:\temp1"
MsgBox (MySite.RemoteFolder) 'display current remote
folder
MySite.Download "index.txt"
MySite.Download "index.txt", "c:\temp2\index.txt"
'now verify that it downloaded okay
If MySite.LocalExists ("c:\temp1\index.txt") Then
MsgBox "File1 downloaded OK."
End If
If MySite.LocalExists ("c:\temp2\index.txt") Then
MsgBox "File2 downloaded OK."
End If
MsgBox "Done"
MySite.Disconnect
MySite.Close
```

RUNNING SCRIPTS FROM THE WINDOWS SCHEDULED TASKS FOLDER

The Windows Task Scheduler is the recommended tool for setting your TE scripts to run at specific times, but you can also use the NT 4 AT Scheduler.

To schedule a task

1. In Windows, choose **Start**.
2. Choose **Programs > Accessories > System Tools > Scheduled Tasks**.
3. Double-click **Add Scheduled Task**. The **Scheduled Task Wizard** appears.
4. Select **Next**.

5. Select **Browse**. The **Select Program to Schedule** dialog appears.
6. Select your script and select **Open**. You are returned to the **Scheduled Task Wizard**.
7. Choose how often to run the script and select **Next**.
8. Select a starting time, recurrence, and starting date and select **Next**.
9. Enter a user name and password for the account that will run the script, and select **Next**.
10. Select **Finish**.

Configuration Notes

- In Windows 2000 or Windows XP you can set up the Transfer Engine so that it can run when no one is logged in.
- In Windows NT 4 you must have Internet Explorer 4 or higher and the Offline Browsing Pack installed to see the **Scheduled Tasks** folder.
- If you do not have the **Scheduled Tasks** folder, you can use the NT 4 AT scheduler.

RUNNING SCRIPTS WITH THE WINDOWS NT 4 AT SCHEDULER

The Windows Task Scheduler is the recommended tool for running TE scripts at specific times, but you can also use the NT 4 AT scheduler.

If you want to use the Windows NT 4 AT Scheduler to run TE scripts at specific times, follow these guidelines:

- A user must be logged in at the time the task is scheduled to run, though the computer can be locked.
- Include the **/interactive** switch in each task.
- Include the full path to the script with the file name and extension.

The following example runs a script at 2:12 pm, every day of the week. The script is on the computer's **C** drive, in the **example** folder, and is named **te-test.vbs**.

Example

```
at 14:12 /interactive /every:M,T,W,Th,F,S,Su
c:\example\te-test.vbs
```

Configuration Notes

- For more details and switches for the AT Scheduler type **AT/?** at the command prompt.
- You can install a GUI task scheduler as part of Internet Explorer if you have version 4 or higher, see http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;EN-US;171229. The task scheduler is part of the **Offline Browsing Pack**.

Distributing the Transfer Engine

DISTRIBUTING THE TE

The Transfer Engine (TE) is a sub-component of CuteFTP Professional. It is COM enabled and provides an interface from which developers can access most of CuteFTP's file transfer related methods.

If you have created a script or application that calls the TE, you may wish to **distribute** your script or application to a group of end-users. In order for the TE to work properly on the end users' machines, you must **license**, **install** and **register** the TE on each machine.

Subsequently you must configure the TE so that it can run properly without the CuteFTP GUI (interface) installed, especially if you plan to run automated or scheduled tasks while not logged in, or if you plan to connect to SSL enabled FTP servers.

LICENSING THE TE (FOR DISTRIBUTION)

Licensing - Steps to License the TE

1. Determine how many end-user seats you will need.
2. Go to http://www.globalscape.com/cuteftppro.
3. Select on the Purchase link located on the page.
4. Purchase one license for each seat you need. If you need to purchase a license to cover a large amount of seats, please call us at 1-800-290-5054 or 1-210-308-8267.
5. Once registered, check your e-mail for the Serial Number

Licensing Considerations

- The TE inherits its registration process from CuteFTP. If running on a system that has a registered copy of CuteFTP installed, you do not need to register the TE. If CuteFTP is not installed (or registered), you must register the TE.
- The TE runs through a 30-day trial just like CuteFTP. Therefore, the TE may be distributed royalty-free with unlimited runtimes for 30 days from the time it is installed on an end-user's computer.
- After residing 30 days on the target computer, it disables itself if not properly registered. The TE must be registered either prior to first launch, during the trial, or after the trial has expired.
- When you purchase a license for CuteFTP you may NOT distribute CuteFTP or any of its sub-components (such as the Transfer Engine) in an unlimited royalty free fashion.
- Each copy of the distributed Transfer Engine must be licensed for each computer where it is installed. This means you must purchase a full license of CuteFTP for each distributed copy of the TE.

- You can purchase the necessary amount of licenses up front or after the TE has expired on the end-user machine. The benefit of licensing up front is that you can distribute the TE and register it on the end-user's machine. They will not see any prompts or registration related dialogs.
- Once you have licensed the TE, you must install it (if not already installed) and then register it on each target machine.
- You are not permitted to distribute the TE as a component of an FTP client or other product that competes with CuteFTP or GlobalSCAPE's Secure FTP Server.

INSTALLING THE TE (FOR DISTRIBUTION)

Installation - Steps to Install the TE

1. Locate the TE component (ftpte.exe), the End User License Agreement (license.txt), and the TE's subordinate dynamic link libraries (sftp21.dll, ssl.dll, etc.) and the resource file (default.lng) on your developer (source) machine.
2. Package the TE along with the other items mentioned in Step 1, along with your installation program, script, or executable.

Note:
You do NOT need to install the full copy of CuteFTP on the end-user's machine unless you require interaction from CuteFTP' GUI. If you were distributing a custom made application, this would not be the case.

Note:
For setting specific options only available through the GUI (that is, no property or method available), you can copy specific registry settings from the source computer to the destination. Most all settings are stored in the registry under the following hive:
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Professional

REGISTERING THE TE (FOR DISTRIBUTION)

Registration - Automated Registration

The first method of registering the TE is the most efficient when dealing with a large amount of target systems, or when you do not have direct access to the target system. Your application installer or script can perform the steps below to transparently register the TE.

1. Purchase a license for the amount of TE seats you want to distribute.
2. Install a copy of the Transfer Engine and related components onto the target machine.

3. Create a new registry key on the target machine at the following location:
   `HKEY_USERS\.DEFAULT\Software\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Professional\Index`
4. Create a new string value in the key above and insert the serial number as the data value.
   `String Value = "1" Data = "[Your Serial Number]"`
5. When the transfer engine is called for the first time, it retrieves this value (the serial number) and uses it to complete the registration with GlobalSCAPE.

Note:
The target machine must have access to the Internet. If no Internet access is available, the registration process may fail and disable the TE.

Note:
The TE is automatically registered if it is installed onto a computer with a registered copy of CuteFTP Professional. Keep in mind that the TE must be the same version as CuteFTP. The TE from CuteFTP Professional 7.0 is NOT automatically registered if it is installed on a computer with a registered copy of CuteFTP version 3.0.

Registration - Manual Registration

If you have physical access to the target machine, or you wish to register the copy installed on your developer machine, do the following:

1. Right-click on the **TE icon** in the systray to display the context menu (while running, the TE is represented by a yellow folder icon with up and down arrows)
2. Select **Enter Serial Numbe**r.
3. Paste or type the Serial Number.
4. Select **Register**.

A message should appear declaring that the registration was successful. The TE can now be used on that computer without interruptions.

If you receive an error message, verify that the serial number was typed correctly and that the number of licensed machines didn't exceed the licenses purchased. If all this is correct and you are still unable to register, contact our support department and provide them with the exact details of the error received.

COM REGISTRATION OF THE TE (FOR DISTRIBUTION)

As a typical COM Component, the TE must be registered as such on the target system. The TE will automatically perform COM Registration if it has been manually executed prior to a script or application instantiating the TE Object.

The preferred method (for distributed versions of the TE on end-user's systems) is to set the appropriate registry entries before trying to call the TE.

COM Registration via the Registry

1. From your installation program, script, or custom application, write the registry entries below to the target system. The entries are shown in the standard .reg file notation.

> **Note:**
> Include the correct the path to the Transfer Engine (/[installpath]/ftpte.exe) where **%MODULE%** is shown below.

```
REGEDIT4
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnection.6]
@="TEConnection Class"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnection.6\CLSID]
@="{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnection]
@="TEConnection Class"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnection\CLSID]
@="{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnection\CurVer]
@="CuteFTPPro.TEConnection.6"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}]
@="TEConnection Class"
"AppID"="{310D78A7-4474-4c17-937A-7FF9D5A1B56C}"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\LocalServer32]
@="%MODULE%" <---PATH TO TE!!!
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\ProgID]
@="CuteFTPPro.TEConnection.6"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\Programmable]
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\TypeLib]
@="{1B04F22B-5012-432d-8EA0-B57DD75EBF9D}"
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\VersionIndependentProgID]
@="CuteFTPPro.TEConnection"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\AppID\ftpte.exe]
```

```
"AppID"="{310D78A7-4474-4c17-937A-7FF9D5A1B56C}"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\AppID\{310D78A7-
4474-4c17-937A-7FF9D5A1B56C}]
@="TEConnection Class"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-
11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}]
@="TEConnection Class"
"AppID"="{310D78A7-4474-4c17-937A-7FF9D5A1B56C}"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-
11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\LocalServer32]
@="%MODULE%" <---PATH TO TE!!!
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-
11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\ProgID]
@="CuteFTPPro.TEConnection.6"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-
11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\Programmable]
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-
11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\TypeLib]
@="{1B04F22B-5012-432d-8EA0-B57DD75EBF9D}"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CLSID\{02172B7A-
11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}\VersionIndependentProgID]
@="CuteFTPPro.TEConnection"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnect
ion]
@="TEConnection Class"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnect
ion\CLSID]
@="{02172B7A-11D6-42b6-9550-41B281804714}"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnect
ion\CurVer]
@="CuteFTPPro.TEConnection.6"
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Classes\CuteFTPPro.TEConnect
ion.6]
@="TEConnection Class"
```

FINALIZING TE DISTRIBUTION

Once the TE has been licensed, installed, registered, and COM registered on the target system, your script or custom application should be able to instantiate the TE object, and invoke any one of the supported methods or properties.

For a complete description of the TE, including its supported methods and properties, sample scripts and extended trouble shooting guide, please refer to the related topics in this user guide and our online knowledge base.

TROUBLESHOOTING TE DISTRIBUTION

Problems with running scripts *while not logged in* (suppressing message prompts or dialogs)

Your script should not contain Message Box functions or any other function that requires user input or shows a window. These prompts do not display when the system is not logged in.

You can physically suppress prompts from ever appearing. Use the `–noprompt` flag and execute the TE from the shell on the target machine before calling it from the script. For example, `run c:\program files\mycustomapp\ftpte.exe –noprompts`.

> **Warning:**
> Suppressing prompts may cause lockups if no default action is available for the event in question, or if the prompt was produced by an error.

The best way to avoid prompts is to properly configure the TE ahead of time to cover all possible prompt scenarios, such as overwrite conditions, or SSL server certificate acceptance dialogs. For example, set your overwrite actions under CuteFTP's global settings to Always Overwrite to avoid any overwrite prompts, or pre-define various rules to cover various overwrite scenarios. You can then export those rules as registry entries and import them onto the target machine.

You can also tell the TE to auto-accept SSL or SSH certificates using the `AutoCloseMethod` parameter of the Option method. Also refer to the following trouble shooting topic regarding running the TE while not logged in.

Locked TE

If your script or application runs the TE and does not return control to the script, it is possible that the TE has locked. Before trying to troubleshoot the problem, make sure you exit the locked TE process using the **Windows Task Manager** (kill the ftpte.exe process).

If your script is connecting to an SSL enabled server, double check the steps listed under Handling SSL Certificates. The primary cause for a locked TE during an SSL connection is the fact that the TE could not locate the client or server certificate, or the client certificate does not reside in the server's trusted list.

An incorrect FTP host address or other common connection problem (host not available, connection refused, etc.) may possibly lock up the TE. Verify that the host, proxy, socks, user and password property value are correct.

The TE may also lock up if an improperly registered TE is launched and unsuccessfully tries to display the registration reminder (Web nag dialog).

Lastly, not properly configuring DCOM configuration for the TE to access the target user's settings may cause the TE to lock up.

Note:
If the system is currently logged in when the TE is run, it runs as the user specified under DCOMCNFG. The TE icon does not display in the system tray when the CuteFTP's main interface runs. Also, the hard coded user's settings are employed when the TE is run, not those of the currently logged in user. This is not an issue if you are running the TE when the system is not logged in.

HANDLING SSL CERTIFICATES (WHEN RUNNING A SCRIPT WHILE NOT LOGGED IN)

Setting up the TE to connect to an FTP server over SSL (via scripting) involves several steps. Follow the instructions below carefully.

You must know whether the TE will require the use of server certificates only, or both server and client certificates.

Server Certificates

Most FTP SSL servers will provide a certificate to the client during authentication. The certificate proves the server's legitimacy to the client. The server's certificate must be added the client's Trusted Certificate store prior to any connection, otherwise the TE will lock up when trying to authenticate.

1. Export or obtain a copy of the server's certificate from the FTP server administrator. Otherwise connect to the server with the CuteFTP GUI (interface) from the developer machine and manually accept the server's certificate. You can then export it from the Trusted List under **Global Options > Security > SSL Security** to a staging directory of your choice.
2. Place/Install the certificate into the target machine's Default User directory. For example:

   ```
   C:\Documents and Settings\Default User\Application
   Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Pro\Security
   ```

3. If you will also be running the TE while logged in, place a copy of the server certificate under the USER folder on the target machine, as follows:

   ```
   C:\Documents and Settings\[USERNAME]\Application
   Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Pro\Security
   - where [USERNAME] is the login name for the user.
   ```

4. Configurel the TE to auto-accept SSL or SSH certificates using the AutoCloseMethod parameter of the Option method. Also refer to the following trouble shooting topic regarding running the TE while not logged in.

Now when you connect, the TE sees the server's certificate and proceed with the connection.

Client Certificates

Some FTP SSL servers require that the client provide a certificate. The certificate proves the veracity of the client and is an important factor in weeding out spurious FTP clients masquerading as legitimate ones.

To setup the target system to use client certificates

1. On the developer machine, create the client certificate and private key pair using the CuteFTP GUI (interface). The certificate creation utility is located under the **Tools > Global Settings > Security > SSL** dialog.
2. Add the client certificate to the server's trusted list. Do this by connecting to the server with the CuteFTP GUI (interface) from the developer machine. On the server, move the certificate from the Pending to the Trusted list. If your server only has a Trusted list, manually import the client certificate into the Trusted list.
3. Place the client certificate and private key into the target machine's USER folder:

   ```
   C:\Documents and Settings\[USERNAME]\Application
   Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Pro\Security
   ```

   - where [USERNAME] is the login name for the user.
4. If you created the certificate set on the developer machine, export the following registry key:

   ```
   HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP
   Professional\Settings\SecuritySSL
   ```
5. Import the registry key from step 4 onto the target machine, or manually create the necessary entries. The entries are shown in standard .reg file notation.

   ```
   REGEDIT4
   [HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP
   Pro\Settings\SecuritySSL]
   "SSLCertificate"="C:\\Documents and
   Settings\\[USERNAME]\\Application
   Data\\GlobalSCAPE\\CuteFTP Pro\\Security\\client.crt"
   "SSLPrivateKey"="C:\\Documents and
   Settings\\[USERNAME]\\Application
   Data\\GlobalSCAPE\\CuteFTP Pro\\Security\\client.key"
   "UseSSLCertificate"=dword:00000001
   "UseSSLCertPassphrase"=dword:00000001
   "ReuseSSLData"=dword:00000000
   "WarnWhenToNonSecure"=dword:00000001
   "DataTransportMethod"=dword:00000001
   "SSLCertPassphrase"="[PASSWORD]"
   ```

   - Where [USERNAME] is the login name for the target system and where [PASSWORD] is the encrypted password exported from the source machine. *Don't modify the password!*

At the next connection, the TE finds the client certificate and uses it to authenticate with the server.

Example

Here is a sample script that connects to a fictitious site running SSL Implicit over port 990. It also writes to the event log for debugging purposes. if you use this script to test your

setup, make sure you modify the MySite.Host line to include your actual FTP SSL server host and login information.

```
#file test.vbs
Const EVENT_SUCCESS = 0
Set objShell = Wscript.CreateObject("Wscript.Shell")
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS,"AT Loaded me"
Set MySite= CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Option ("ThrowError") = True
MySite.Host =
"ftp://myuser:mypass@ftp.mysslserver.com:990
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS,"vars set"
MySite.Connect
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS, "connected"
MySite.Disconnect
MySite.Close
```

Methods

FINDING A METHOD ALPHABETICALLY

AbortAsync
Close
Connect
CreateLocalFolder
CreateRemoteFolder
Disconnect
Download
DownloadAsync
GetList
LocalExists
LocalRemove
LocalRename
RemoteCommand
RemoteExists
RemoteRemove
RemoteRename
S2Sxfer
Synchronize
TECommand
TransferURL
TransferURLAsync
Upload
UploadAsync
Wait
WriteToLOG

FINDING A METHOD BY CATEGORY

Here you can link to every method listed in the help file.

Connection	**Files and Folders**
Connect	CreateLocalFolder
Disconnect	LocalExists
Close	LocalRename
	LocalRemove
	CreateRemoteFolder
Transfer	RemoteExists
Upload	RemoteRename
Download	RemoteRemove
S2Sxfer	
Synchronize	
TransferURL	**Commands**
	AbortAsync
Asynchronous Transfer	RemoteCommand
UploadAsync	TECommand
DownloadAsync	Wait
TransferURLAsync	WriteToLOG

BASIC

Connecting to a remote server

Description

Use the **Connect** method to log in to the remote server. Before calling it, you set the protocol, host address, user name, and password to establish a successful connection.

Syntax

```
Object.Connect
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.net"
MySite.Login = "username"
MySite.Password = "password"
MySite.Connect
```

Note:
Any time you call a Transfer function, the connect function is called indirectly. It is recommended you explicitly invoke the **Connect** function though it is not necessary. You can always use the IsConnected property to determine whether you are connected at any given time.

Downloading files

Description

Use the **Download** method to transfer a file or folder from a remote location to your local hard drive.

Syntax

```
Object.Download (BSTR strRemoteName ,BSTR strLocalName ,
long nMultiPartNumber)
```

Parameters

strLocalName	This is optional, use it only if you want to change the destination name or path for the downloaded files or folder. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
strRemoteName	This is the path to the remote item you are downloading. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
nMultiPartNumber	Use this to split the download into multiple parts. The default value = 1. The value specifies the number of parts used for the download.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Specify user, pass, host, and connect as normal...
MySite.Connect ‘Recommended: call connect first
‘next line changes to a predetermined folder so you can
use a relative path in the download method
MySite.RemoteFolder = "/c:/Inetpub/ftproot/Temp/Temp/"
MsgBox (MySite.RemoteFolder) 'display current remote
folder
MySite.Download "agent.ini", "c:\temp\agent1.ini"
'now verify downloaded ok
If CBool(MySite.LocalExists ("c:\temp\agent1.ini")) Then
MsgBox "File downloaded OK."
End If
```

Configuration Notes

- Setting the Multi-part download attribute can greatly increase the transfer speed for larger files under certain conditions. For example, the site must support multiple concurrent connections from the same user and you must have significant bandwidth.
- The Download method is a syncrhonous command, meaning it must finish executing before subsequent commands in your script can be called. Use the method DownloadAsync (which also supports Multi-part transfers) to asyncrhonously download files, which allows you to execute the rest of the script while the download(s) take place.

Uploading files

Description

Use the **Upload** method to transfer a file or folder from a local hard drive to a remote server.

Syntax

```
Object.Upload(BSTR strLocalName ,BSTR strRemoteName ,
long nMultiPartNumber)
```

Parameters

strRemoteName	This is optional, use it only if you want to change the destination name or path for the uploaded files or folders. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
strLocalName	This is the path to the local item you are uploading. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
nMultiPartNumber	Use this to split the upload into multiple parts. The default value = 1. The value specifies the number of parts used for the download.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Specify user, pass, host, and connect as normal...
MySite.Connect ‘Recommended: call connect first
MySite.RemoteFolder = "Temp"
MySite.LocalFolder = "C:\123"
‘using relative path, all files in folder 123 are
uploaded to the folder Temp off the current folder on the
server.
MySite.Upload "*.*"
```

Configuration Notes

- You can only use multi-part uploads with servers that support the COMB command. Currently, only GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP server supports the COMB command.
- Setting the Multi-part upload attribute can greatly increase the transfer speed for larger files under certain conditions. For example, the site must support multiple concurrent connections from the same user and you must have significant bandwidth.
- The Upload method is a syncrhonous command, meaning it must finish executing before subsequent commands in your script can be called. Use the method UploadAsync (which also supports Multi-part transfers) to asyncrhonously upload files, which allows you to execute the rest of the script while the upload(s) take place.

Transferring from a URL

Description

Use the **TransferURL** method to download files directly from a Web address.

Syntax

```
Object.TransferURL(BSTR bstrRemoteName, long
nMultipartNumber)
```

Parameters

bstrRemoteName	This is a string value for the URL for the file transfer such as; (ftp://ftp.globalscape.com/pub/cuteftp/cuteftp.exe).
nMultipartNumber	This is optional and will split a file into parts for transfer. The default = 1.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.TransferURL
"ftp://ftp.globalscape.com/pub/cuteftp/cuteftp.exe"
```

The TE recognizes these URL formats:

```
ftp://user:pass@ ftp.sitename.com:port
ftp://user:pass@ ftp.sitename.com
ftp://user@ ftp.sitename.com
ftp:// ftp.sitename.com:port
ftp:// ftp.sitename.com
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass ß l: user is a
lowercase "L", not "one"
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
```

```
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
```

Creating a local folder

Description

Use the **CreateLocalFolder** method to create a new folder (directory) on your local hard drive.

Syntax

```
Object.CreateLocalFolder(BSTR strName)
```

Parameters

BstrName	This contains the folder's relative or absolute path.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.CreateLocalFolder "c:\temp\New Folder"
'now check to see if it was created
MySite.LocalFolder = "c:\temp\New Folder"
currentdir = MySite.LocalFolder
MsgBox currentdir
```

Creating a remote folder

Description

Use the **CreateRemoteFolder** method to create a new folder (directory) on a remote server.

Syntax

```
Object.CreateRemoteFolder(BSTR strName)
```

Parameters

BstrName	This contains the folder's relative or absolute path.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
```

```
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.Connect
MySite.CreateRemoteFolder("/dir") 'creates /dir (because
absolute path was used)
MySite.RemoteFolder = "/dir" 'now change to the newly
create 'dir' folder
MySite.CreateRemoteFolder("dir2") 'creates /dir/dir2
(because relative path was used)
```

Renaming a remote file or folder

Description

Use the **RemoteRename** method to rename a file or folder on the remote server.

Syntax

```
Object.RemoteRename(BSTR bstrFrom, BSTR bstrTo)
```

Parameters

BstrFrom	This contains the folder's old name in a relative or absolute path. The path must be the same in both parameters.
BstrTo	This contains the folder's new name in a relative or absolute path. The path must be the same in both parameters.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password,
etc.
MySite.RemoteRename "/pub/user1/file.txt",
"/pub/user1/file3.txt"
```

Renaming a local file or folder

Description

Use the **LocalRename** method to rename a file or folder on your local hard disk.

Syntax

```
Object.LocalRename(BSTR bstrFrom, BSTR bstrTo)
```

Parameters

BstrFrom	This contains the folder's old name in its full

	absolute path.
BstrTo	This contains the folder's new name in its full absolute path.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
MySite.LocalRename "c:\file.txt", "e:\temp\users\file.exe"
```

> **Note:**
> Make sure you specify the full source and destination path. If you had written the command as MySite.LocalRename "c:\file.txt", "file.exe", thinking it would rename it using relative paths, you might be surprised to find that your file has been moved to your profiles folder (system dependent). In essence, the LocalRename is similar to a MOVE command issued through drag and drop with the added name change sequence.

Deleting a remote file or folder

Description

Use the **RemoteRemove** method to delete a remote file or folder. You can specify the file or folder with absolute or relative paths. If the command fails, make sure you have specified the correct path and that you have the appropriate permissions required to delete the item.

Syntax

```
Object.RemoteRemove(BSTR bstrName)
```

Parameters

BstrName	This contains the folder's relative or absolute path.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
MySite.RemoteRemove "/pub/user1/file.txt"
MySite.RemoteRemove("file.ext") 'removes if exact match
MySite.RemoteRemove("*.obj") 'wild card match with a specific extension
```

```
MySite.RemoteRemove("*.aaa" & Chr(10) & "*.bbb" & Chr(10)
& "t*") 'various wildcard filters
```

Deleting a local file or folder

Description

Use the **LocalRemove** method to delete a local file or folder. Use the absolute path name for the item you want to delete.

Syntax

```
Object.LocalRemove(BSTR bstrName)
```

Parameters

BstrName	This contains the items full absolute path.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.LocalRemove "c:\temp\file.txt"
```

> **Note:**
> You can also you wild cards to replace the string value of bstrName. These wild card masks include "*", "?", and '\n" (new line symbol, also known as Chr(10) in VB)

Example 2

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.LocalFolder = "c:\temp"
MySite.LocalRemove("file.ext") 'removes if exact match
MySite.LocalRemove("*.obj") 'wild card match with a
specific extension
MySite.LocalRemove("*.aaa" & Chr(10) & "*.bbb" & Chr(10) &
"t*") 'various wildcard filters
```

Checking for a remote file or folder

Description

Use the RemoteExists method to verify that a remote file or folder exists. BstrName should be the full path.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.RemoteExists(BSTR bstrName)
```

Parameters

Return values

true	File or folder does exist
false	File or folder does not exist

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
R = MySite.RemoteExists( "/pub/user/file.txt")
If (R) Then
MsgBox "File exists on remote side"
Else
MsgBox "File doesn't exist on remote side"
End if
```

> **Note:**
> If using an "if not" conditional, use CBool instead of boolean as the return type.

Correct:

```
if not CBool(MySite.RemoteExists(strRemote)) then
MsgBox "Error! " & MySite.ErrorDescription
```

Incorrect:

```
if not MySite.RemoteExists(strRemote) then
MsgBox "Error! " & MySiteErrorDescription
```

Checking for a local file or folder

Description

Use the **LocalExists** method to verify that a local file or folder exists. BstrName should be the full path.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.LocalExists(BSTR bstrName);
```

Parameters

Return values

True	File or folder does exist
False	File or folder does not exist

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
L = MySite.LocalExists("c:\temp\file.txt")
If (L) Then
MsgBox "File exists on local side"
Else
MsgBox "File doesn't exist on local side"
End if
```

ADVANCED

Sending commands to the Transfer Engine

Description

Use the **TECommand** method to pass various commands to the Transfer Engine component. If you leave the Transfer Engine running for a long time, it is recommended you include the **DeleteFinished** or **DeleteAll** in your scripts to occasionally empty the queue. The Transfer Engine does not empty the queue automatically.

Syntax

```
Object.TECommand(BSTR bstrParameter)
```

Parameters

"CLOSE" or **"EXIT"**	Closes the TE (all tasks will be stopped)
"EXITNOPENDING"	Closes the TE if no pending tasks are available
"UPDATESETTINGS"	Reloads settings from the registry (Note you can modify the registry from VBS)
"DELETEFINISHED"	Removes finished items from queue
"DELETEALL"	Removes all items from queue

> **Note:**
> You can use any number of spaces or underscores inside these parameters. For example, "update setting" and "_UPDATE_SETTINGS_" are the same.

If the Transfer Engine has several tasks, or must run for a long time, you should include the **DeleteFinished** command in your scripts to occasionally clear items from the queue.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.TECommand("delete finished")
```

Sending commands to a server

Description

Use the **RemoteCommand** method to send the server any supported command. This function acts like the raw input command found in CuteFTP.

Syntax

```
Object.RemoteCommand(BSTR bstrCmd)
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
MySite.RemoteCommand "PWD" ‘sends a print working directory command
```

> **Note:**
> If you include the word **"LIST"**, or **"RETR"**, or **"STOR"** in bstrCmd then the Transfer Engine will open the data connection, perform the operation (to the buffer) and then discard it. You should use the **GetList**, **Download** or **Upload** methods to accomplish these tasks.

You can concatenate strings to perform custom commands. For example, if you wanted to do use CHMOD on a file, you could do as shown in the example below:

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
strMODE = "777" ‘full permissions
```

```
strFile = InputBox("Type in the file name below ", "CHMOD
Dialog", "cftppro10.log") ‘an input dialog with some
default content
strvar = "SITE CHMOD " & strMODE & " " & strFile
‘concatenate the values
MySite.RemoteCommand strvar 'send the command
```

Synchronizing folders with the TE

Description

Use the **Synchronize** method to perform one or two way mirrors of a remote and local folder's contents.

> **Note:**
> The synchronize method contains as many as 9 parameters. Be sure to use absolute path names for both local and remote folder paths.

Syntax

```
Object.Synchronize(BSTR bstrRemoteName, BSTR bstrLocalName,
long nDirection, long nAction, long nCasehandling, BOOL
bRecursive, BOOL bIgnoreLinks, BOOL bDelDestination, BOOL
bPromptDel);
```

Parameters

#	Name	Value
1	BstrRemoteName	String value that specifies the absolute path name of the remote folder
2	BstrLocalName	String value that specifies the absolute path name of the local folder

#	Name	Value
3	nDirection	0 = Mirror Local (make the remote look just like the local) 1 = Mirror Remote (make the local look just like the remote) 2 = Mirror Both
4	nAction	When nDirection = 2 (Mirror Both) 0 = Mirror the more recent file 1 = Mirror the larger file 2 = Prompt for matching file names 3 = Skip mirroring files with the same names ---------- When nDirection = 0 or 1 (Mirror Local or Remote) 0 = Use Global Overwrite settings in the CuteFTP shell for matching filenames 1 = Always overwrite the file with a matching name 2 = Numerate the file (filename[1]) 3 = Skip
5	nCaseHandling	0 = Transfer first and skip the rest (default) 1 = Show rename prompt 2 = Numerate Note: This action applies when matching filenames are found and the only difference is the filename case.
6	bRecursive	0 = Don't sync subfolders 1 = Apply sync to subfolders (default)
7	bIgnoreLinks	0 = Don't ignore symbolic links 1 = Ignore symbolic links (default)
8	bDelDestination	0 = Don't remove destination 1 = Remove destination if source does not exist (default) Note: This action only applies to one-way mirroring. If a file exists in the destination that isn't in the source being mirrored, then delete the destination file.
9	bPromptDel	0 = Don't prompt before removing destination 1 = Prompt before removing destination (default) Note: Only applies to one-way mirroring when DelDestination is True.

Examples

```
'Simple synchronize using minimal parameters
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
```

```
‘Don’t forget to initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.

MySite.Connect
MySite.Synchronize "/pub/myfolder", "C:\mysitesfiles", 0, 1
'This will perform a local mirror, overwriting any matching filename.


'Simple synchronize using minimal parameters
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Don’t forget to initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.

MySite.Connect
MySite.Synchronize "/pub/myfolder", "C:\mysitesfiles", 2, 0
'This will perform full mirror (both), overwriting older files when a matching filename is
found.


'Slightly more complex synchronize routine used to synchronize bookmarks. Uses variables
for the path names
strRemotePath = "\Favorites"
strLocalPath = "C:\Documents and Settings\username\Favorites"
‘Don’t forget to initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
MySite.Connect
        If (Not (MySite.IsConnected)) Then
        MsgBox "Unable to connect to server:" + MySite.Host
        End if
MySite.Synchronize strRemotePath, strLocalPath, 2, 3, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1
'Performs a full mirror, skips matching filenames, transfers only the first file if multiple files
are found with the same name but different case, applies to subfolders, ignores symbolic
links, does not remove destination files if the source doesn't exist (N/A when dealing with
dual mirror), and prompt prior to deleting anything (N/A when dealing with dual mirror).
MsgBox "DONE!" ‘Alert me to the completed task
MySite.Disconnect ‘Disconnects from the site when done
MySite.Close ‘Close the Transfer Engine process


‘A full synchronizaiton VB subroutine:
Sub Sync()
```

```
Dim MySite
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")

strHost = "ftp.yourhost.com"
strPath = "/pub"
strLocalPath = "c:\temp\sync_test"

strHost = InputBox("Enter host", "CuteFTP Pro", strHost)
strPath = InputBox("Enter remote path", "CuteFTP Pro", strPath)
strLocalPath = InputBox("Enter local path", "CuteFTP Pro", strLocalPath)

MySite.Host = strHost

MySite.CaseHandling = 1
MySite.Recursive = False
MySite.IgnoreLinks = True
MySite.DeleteDestination = False
MySite.PromptDelete = True

nUserChoise = MsgBox ("Mirror remote: " & strHost & strPath & " to local " &
strLocalPath & " ?", vbYesNoCancel)
If nUserChoise = vbYes Then
        MySite.Synchronize strPath, strLocalPath, 1, 0
else
        nUserChoise = MsgBox ("Mirror local: " & strHost & strLocalPath & " to
        remote " & strPath & " ?", vbYesNoCancel)
        If nUserChoise = vbYes Then
                MySite.Synchronize strPath, strLocalPath, 0, 0
        else
                nUserChoise = MsgBox ("Mirror both: " & strHost & strPath & " <-
                > " & strLocalPath & " ?", vbYesNoCancel)
                If nUserChoise = vbYes Then
                        MySite.Synchronize strPath, strLocalPath, 2, 1
                else
                End if
        End if
End if

End Sub
```

Transferring from site to site (FXP)

Description

Use the **S2Sxfer** method to transfer a file from one remote site to another. You must use absolute path names for the source and target folders.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.S2Sxfer(BSTR bstrSourceName, BSTR
bstrDestName, BSTR bstrPeerHost, BSTR bstrPeerLogin, BSTR
bstrPeerPassword, long Port, BSTR bstrPeerProtocol);
```

Parameters

bstrSourceName	source file and folder name
bstrDestName	target file and folder name
bstrPeerHost	target host name
bstrPeerLogin	target login
bstrPeerPassword	target password
Port	target port
BstrPeerProtocol	target protocol (FXP can be applied for hosts with different protocols FTP, FTP-S)

Return values

true	Transfer was successful
false	Transfer failed

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.Connect
MySite.S2Sxfer "/cftppro14.log",
"/home/myfolder/cftppro14.log",
"ftp.destinationhost.com", "username", "passwrd"
'everything else left as default
```

Writing messages in a log

Description

Use the **WriteToLOG** method to write a message directly to the connection log saved in the path set in CuteFTP Professional's global options. It is useful for documenting events to aid in script debugging.

Syntax

```
Object.WriteToLOG(BSTR bstr , BSTR bstrType)
```

Parameters

bstr	The log message.
bstrType	A log message, type: "STATUS", "ERROR", "NOTE", "COMMAND", "RAW". The default is "STATUS".

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com/pub/cuteftp"
strResult = MySite.Wait
If (strResult = "FINISHED") then
MySite.WriteToLOG "Transfer successful!!"
MySite.WriteToLOG "Transfer successful!!", "error"
MySite.WriteToLOG "Transfer successful!!", "note"
End if
As result, the log will contain the following strings:
STATUS: > Transfer successful!!
ERROR: > Transfer successful!!
Note > Transfer successful!!
```

Resuming a transfer

Though there is no resume method you can use the **RemoteCommand** method to send the APPE (Append) command to a server. APPE is the FTP command to resume a transfer.

Example

```
MySite.RemoteCommand "APPE html/test.txt"
```

> **Note:**
> The **RemoteCommand** method exists to allow you to manually pass any command to the server, even if that command is not natively supported through the TE API.

Waiting for a task to complete

Description

Use the **Wait** method to tell the Transfer Engine to hold all other tasks until a specific asynchronous task is completed. Then continue with the rest of the script.

Syntax

```
String Object.Wait (long taskIndex, long timeout)
```

Parameters

taskIndex	This is the task index in the asynchronous tasks array. The default = -1 (which is current task). It can range from 0 to the total number of tasks minus one.
timeout	Determines how long (in milliseconds) to wait for a finished, cancelled, or errored status before continuing with the script.

Return value

"CANCELLED"	Transfer was stopped by the user
"FINISHED"	Transfer was successfully finished
"ERROR"	There were errors during the transfer
"SKIPPED"	The transfer was skipped (file overwrite rules)

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.TransferURLAsync
"ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com/pub/cuteftp"
strResult = MySite.Wait
If (strResult = "ERROR") then
MsgBox "warning! An error has occurred!"
End if
```

Configuration Notes

- The default timeout value for the **Wait** method is 21,805,184 milliseconds, or approximately 6 hours.
- The maximum possible value for timeout is 2,147,483,647 milliseconds, or just under 25 days.
- You can set the **Wait** method to never timeout by using a timeout value of 0 (zero).
- For hints on **Wait** method timeouts, see Timeout strategies.

Stopping transfers and other events

Description

Use the **Disconnect** method to end an event in progress. It is normally used to stop a file transfer.

Syntax

```
Object.Disconnect()
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.TransferURLAsync
MySite.Disconnect
```

Configuration Notes

- Disconnect is not the same as the standard FTP command QUIT. Instead it is simply a command to stop the current transfer task. You can issue a QUIT command prior to invoking Disconnect by using the RemoteCommand function.
- A socket disconnect (more brutal than QUIT) to an FTP server occurs automatically after all transfers and other commands have finished. This is similar to the Connect command, which is implicitly called when a transfer method is invoked.
- The example above uses the TransferURLAsync command to pass the TE an FTP file location to download. Since the TransferURLAsync command is asynchronous, you could called TransferURLAsync multiple times consecutively.
- What happens if you issue a Disconnect command after issuing multiple TransferURLAsync commands? The last called TransferURLAsync request is the one that is cancelled.

Closing the Transfer Engine

Description

Use the **Close** function to exit the Transfer Engine. You can include parameters to only exit on certain conditions.

Syntax

```
Object.Close (BSTR bstrParameter)
```

Parameters

""(default empty), "CLOSE", "EXIT"	Closes TE (all tasks will be stopped)
"EXITNOPENDING"	Closes TE if no pending tasks available

> **Note:**
> You can use any number of spaces or underscores inside these parameters. For example, "exit no pending" and "_EXIT_NO_PENDING_" are the same.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.LocalFolder = "c:\temp"
MySite.TransferURLAsync
"ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com/pub/cuteftp"
MySite.Close "EXITNOPENDING"
```

Uploading items asynchronously

Description

Use the **UploadAsync** method to upload a file or folder to a remote server asynchronously. An asynchronous upload starts and then returns control to the script before the transfer finishes. This allows you to perform many simultaneous transfers because the method does not wait for the upload to end.

Immediately after you call this method subsequent methods in your script will be called, so be careful when timing certain events.

If **UploadAsync** encounters a problem when trying to complete its task, it will not throw a COM, ATL, or VB error. **UploadAsync** will also adhere to your max global and per site settings.

Syntax

```
Object.UploadAsync(BSTR strLocalName [,BSTR strRemoteName
[, long nMultiPartNumber]])
```

Parameters

strRemoteName	This is optional, use it only if you want to change the destination name or path for the uploaded files or folders. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
strLocalName	This is the path to the local item you are uploading. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
nMultiPartNumber	Use this to split the upload into multiple parts. The default value = 1. The value specifies the number of parts used for the download.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
‘Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.Connect
MySite.UploadAsync "c:\temp\*.vob", "/DVDFiles" 'uploads
as many .vob files as concurrent connection settings
allow
```

Note:
The Multi-part parameter for the **UploadAysnc** is currently limited to servers that support this operation, due to the need to recombine the files after the upload of each part has completed. As of September 2002, GlobalSCAPE's Secure FTP server was the only server to support this function.

Downloading items asynchronously

Description

Use the **DownloadAsync** method to download a file or folder to the local hard drive asynchronously. An asynchronous download starts and then returns control to the script before the transfer finishes. This allows you to perform many simultaneous transfers because the method does not wait for the download to end. Immediately after you call this method subsequent methods in your script will be called, so be careful when timing certain events.

If **DownloadAsync** encounters a problem when trying to complete its task, it will not throw a COM, ATL, or VB error. **DownloadAsync** will also adhere to your max global and per site settings.

Syntax

```
Object.DownloadAsync(BSTR strRemoteName ,BSTR
strLocalName , long nMultiPartNumber)
```

Parameters

strLocalName	This is optional, use it only if you want to change the destination name or path for the downloaded files or folder. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
strRemoteName	This is the path to the remote item you are downloading. You can use absolute or relative paths with or without wildcards.
nMultiPartNumber	Use this to split the download into multiple parts. The default value = 1. The value specifies the number of parts used for the download.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.Connect
MySite.DownloadAsync "/pub/cuteftp/english/*", "c:\temp"
'downloads all files in the pub/cuteftp folder
```

Note:
You can call the **DownloadAsync** method many times sequentially in a script. Each call, in turn, opens a new data connection to the specified

server, enabling you to transfer multiple files simultaneously. This, combined with the ability to transfer the file in multiple parts, greatly increases the overall transfer speed and execution of your task.

Transferring from URLs asynchronously

Description

- Use the **TransferURLAsync** method to start a download from a web address, and return control to the script immediately. This method does not wait for the transfer to end. You can use it to perform many simultaneous transfers.
- The difference between this method and DownloadAsync is simply the ability to specify all of the necessary parameters in one command, rather than having to set the user name, port, host, etc. and then transfer a file.
- Immediately after you call this method subsequent methods in your script will be called, so be careful when timing certain events.
- If **TransferURLAsync** encounters a problem when trying to complete its task, it will not throw a COM, ATL, or VB error. **TransferURLAsync** will also adhere to your max global and per site settings. You can't use wildcards in this method.

Syntax

```
Object.TransferURLAsync(BSTR bstrURL [, long
nMultipartNumber])
```

Parameters

bstrURL	A string value for the URL for the file transfer (ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com/pub/cuteftp)
nMultipartNumber	An optional multipart parameter with default = 1

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.TransferURLAsync
"ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com/pub/cuteftp/english"
‘this will transfer the entire English CuteFTP directory
from the CuteFTP.com ftp site.
```

Normal Formats Supported

```
ftp://user:pass@ ftp.sitename.com:port
ftp://user:pass@ ftp.sitename.com
ftp://user@ ftp.sitename.com
ftp:// ftp.sitename.com:port
ftp:// ftp.sitename.com
```

```
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass ß l: user is a
lowercase "L", not "one"
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l/p: user/pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub p:44 l: user p: pass
ftp://ftp.sitename.com/pub port:44 l: user p: pass
```

Extended URL formats

Aside from the standard URL formats shown above, additional specifiers may be used to denote the direction of transfer and download path. Use the extended format to perform site to site transfers, uploads, targeted downloads, and more.

The standard url ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com will be used in the following examples:

Format: Normal URL transfer

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync
"ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com"
'download site to the default download folder
```

Format: URL [space] "-->" [space] LPATH

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com
--> c:\temp"
'download site to the c:\temp folder
```

Format: URL [space] "<--" [space] LPATH

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com
<-- c:\web"
'upload files from c:\web to the site
```

Format: URL1 [space] "<->" [space] URL2

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com
<->
```

```
ftp://user2:pass2@ftp.host2.com" 'perform a site to site
transfer
```

Format: URL [space] "<==" [space] LPATH

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com
<== c:\web"
'synchronize (mirror local) the c:\web folder to the site
```

Format: URL [space] "==>" [space] LPATH

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com
==> c:\web"
'synchronize (mirror remote) the site to c:\web
```

Format: URL [space] "<=>" [space] LPATH

Example:
```
MySite.TransferURLAsync "ftp://user:pass@ftp.host.com
<=> c:\web"
'synchronize both local and remote (mirror both)
```

Stopping asynchronous transfers

Description

Use the **AbortAsync** function to stop an asynchronous task created previously by UploadAsync, DownloadAsync or TransferURLAsync. Refer to those methods for more information.

Syntax

```
Object.AbortAsync(long taskIdx)
```

Parameters

TaskIdx	This is a task index in the array of tasks created by the various asynchronous methods. The default value of taskIdx is - 1 which specifies all the asynchronous tasks in array. TaskIdx should be between 0 and AsyncTaskNumber minus one.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Option("CleanupAsync") = False
‘Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MySite.Connect
MySite.DownloadAsync "*.*", "c:\temp"
MsgBox "Number of tasks created: " &
MySite.AsyncTaskNumber
```

```
If MySite.AsyncTaskNumber > 10 then
MsgBox "Aborting 11th task"
MySite.AbortAsync ( 10 ) 'abort task # 11 (one less then
total, since
starts from 0)
End if
```

Note:
You must set `MySite.Option("CleanupAsync") = False` so that all asynchronous tasks are counted. Otherwise, only the last asynchronous task launched will be referenced when calling the AbortAsync method.

Automatically encrypting and compressing transfers

To automatically encrypt and compress files before transfer, you will need both CuteZIP and CuteFTP Professional. You can also compress and encrypt files after transferring them by using GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server's Custom Site Commands. The benefits of encrypting files prior or post transfer depends on the circumstances and level of trust for the particular host.

In the example script below, an entire folder (including sub-folders) is compressed, encrypted (using Twofish 128 bit encryption) and then transferred via regular FTP to an FTP server. Since the archived file is encrypted, there is no need to connect using SSL, OTP, or SSH2 unless you wished to also protect the login process.

Example

```
Dim WshShell, MySite, Return
Set WshShell = CreateObject("WScript.Shell") 'Window's
Scripting Host shell object
'next line calls the run method of the WSH shell object.
It returns true once CuteZIP does its thing.
'The complete command line instructions for CuteZIP are
located here.
If Return = WshShell.run
("c:\progra~1\global~1\CuteZIP\cutezip.exe -c -p12345
c:\archive c:\temp", 0, true) Then
  Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
  MySite.Option ("ThrowError") = True
  MySite.Host = "ftp://user:pass@myftpsite.com" 'one of
the ways to connect using the TE
  MySite.Connect
```

```
  MySite.Upload "c:\archive.zip" 'upload the new archive,
then check to see if it made it up to the server.
  if not CBool(MySite.RemoteExists("\archive.zip")) then
     MsgBox "Failed to Upload, Exiting!"
  Else
     MsgBox "Success!"
  End If
  MySite.Disconnect
  MySite.Close
Else
MsgBox "Compression and Encryption Failed, Exiting!"
End If
```

Note:
You can optionally protect the FTP login by connecting with SSL, SSH2 or OTP using CuteFTP Professional's Transfer Engine (GlobalSCAPE's Secure FTP Server 2 supports SSL, OTP, and SSH2 logins). Use the protocol property to set the connection type prior to calling MySite.Host and MySite.Connect.

Retrieving a folder listing

Description

Use the **GetList** method to download folder listings.

Syntax

```
Object.GetList(BSTR bstrPath, BSTR bstrLocalFile, BSTR
bstrFormat, BOOL *pVal)
```

Parameters

bstrPath	The remote path to be listed. Leave it empty if its the current path.
bstrLocalFile	Specifies a local file name where the listing can be saved.
bstrFormat	Can be used to format the listing. If left empty, a raw listing will be returned. You can specify %NAME, %DATE, and %SIZE as return values in a string.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com/pub"
MySite.Connect
```

```
MySite.GetList "", "c:\temp_list.txt" 'saves a raw
listing for the default path to the file temp_list.txt
MsgBox MySite.GetResult 'retrieves and displays the
listing
```

Example 2

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.Connect
MySite.GetList "/pub", "", "FILE NAME:   %NAME" 'goes to
pub folder, doesn't save the listing to file, and formats
it as shown
MsgBox MySite.GetResult 'retrieves and displays the
listing
```

Example 3

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.Connect
MySite.GetList "/pub", "", "NAME= %NAME SIZE= %SIZE DATE=
%DATE" 'goes to pub folder, doesn't save the listing to
file, and formats it as shown
MsgBox MySite.GetResult 'retrieves and displays the
listing
```

Note:
GetResult is an optional method used only with GetList. It simply retrieves the data. Without GetResult the data is written to the buffer, or if defined in the parameters, the data is written to the log.

Properties

FINDING A PROPERTY ALPHABETICALLY

Here you can link to any property listed in the Help file.

AsyncTaskNumber	IsPending	RemoteSiteFilter
AutoRename	Links	RestSupport
ClearCommandChannel	LocalFilterExclude	Retries
ClearDataConnection	LocalFilterInclude	SocksInfo
CombSupport	LocalFolder	Speed

DataChannel	Log	Status
Delay	Login	TimeElapsed
ErrorDescription	MaxConnections	TimeLeft
FileSize	Option	TotalSize
FileTimeModified	Password	TransferredSize
FileType	Port	TransferType
HomeDir	Protocol	UseProxy
Host	ProxyInfo	
IgnoreLinks	Recursive	
IsConnected	RemoteFilterExclude	
	RemoteFilterInclude	
	RemoteFolder	

FINDING A PROPERTY BY CATEGORY

You can find properties here listed by:

- Connection properties
- Read-only connection properties
- Transfer properties
- Read-only transfer properties
- Filter properties

Connection properties

Protocol	ClearDataConnection
Host	ClearCommandChannel
Login	Retries
Password	Delay
Port	Links
UseProxy	LocalFolder
ProxyInfo	RemoteFolder
SocksInfo	MaxConnections

DataChannel	Option

Read-only connection properties

IsConnected	HomeDir
ErrorDescription	Log

Transfer properties

TransferType	Recursive
LocalFolder	IgnoreLinks
RemoteFolder	Option
AutoRename	

Read-only transfer properties

AsyncTaskNumber	Speed
Combsupport	TimeLeft
IsPending	TimeElapsed
Status	FileType
RestSupport	FileSize
TotalSize	FileTimeModified
TransferredSize	

Filter properties

LocalFilterInclude	RemoteFilterInclude
LocalFilterExclude	RemoteFilterExclude
	RemoteSiteFilter

CONNECTION PROPERTIES

Setting protocols

Description

Use the **Protocol** property to set or retrieve the value for the protocol type.

Syntax

```
String Object.Protocol
```

Parameters

"FTP"	File Transfer Protocol
"FTPS"	FTP using SSL in explicit mode (standard port 21)
"FTPS_IMPLICIT"	Extension of FTP using SSL -- FTP using SSL in implicit mode (specific port)
"SFTP"	Secure protocol based on SSH2
"FTP_SKEY_MD4"	Secure one time password login using MD4
"FTP_SKEY_MD5"	Secure one time password login using MD5
"HTTP"	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
"HTTPS"	HTTP with SSL

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTPS_IMPLICIT "
MySite.Host = "ftp.ftp.net"
MySite.Port = 990
MySite.Login = "username"
MySite.Password = "password"
MySite.Connect
```

> **Note:**
> You can find more options for using SSL in ClearDataChannel.

Setting a host address for a connection

Description

Use the **Host** property to set or retrieve the value for the host name of a site when you are connecting.

Syntax

```
int Object.Host
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Host = "ftp.ftp.net"
MySite.Port = 21
```

```
MySite.Login = "username"
MySite.Password = "password"
```

Setting your user name

Description

Use the **Login** property to set or retrieve the value for the user name (login) you use to connect.

Syntax

```
String Object.Login
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.Login = "username"
MySite.Password = "password"
MySite.Connect
```

Setting the password for a connection

Description

Use the **Password** property to set or retrieve the value for the password you use to connect.

Syntax

```
String Object.Password
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Host = "ftp.ftp.net"
Object.Login = "username"
MySite.Password = "password"
MySite.Connect
```

Setting the port for a connection

Description

Use the **Port** property to set or retrieve the value for the Port on the server when you connect.

Syntax

```
int Object.Port
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Host = "ftp.cuteftp.com"
```

```
MySite.Port = 21
MySite.Login = "username"
MySite.Password = "password"
MySite.Connect
```

Transferring files in an unencrypted data channel

Description

Use the **ClearDataConnection** property to specify whether the data channel should be encrypted or not when using FTP over SSL.

Syntax

```
long Object.ClearDataConnection
```

Parameters

True	Your login is encrypted but data transfers are not. This is the default.
False	Your login and data transfers are encrypted.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTPS"
MySite.ClearDataConnection = false 'encrypt FTP data channel
```

Configuration Notes

- The default is true (encrypted), so only set this property if you wish to log in securely but transfer data in the clear.
- This property will only work if the remote server supports SSL and clear data channel connections (PROT C command according to RFC 2228) and you have specified FTPS as the protocol type.

Sending unencrypted commands over an SSL connection

Description

Use the **ClearCommandChannel** property to specify that the command channel should not be encrypted over SSL.

Syntax

```
long Object.ClearCommandChannel
```

Parameters

True	Your login is encrypted but as data transfers start, commands are not encrypted.
False	Your login and subsequent commands are encrypted. This is the default

Example

```
MySite.Host = "host"
MySite.Protocol = "FTPS"
MySite.ClearCommandChannel = true '<-- CCC will be sent prior to the first data connection operation.
MySite.Connect
```

Configuration Notes

- The default is false (encrypted), so only set this property if you wish to log in securely but send subsequent commands in the clear.
- This property will only work if the remote server supports SSL and clear command channel connections (according to RFC 2228) and you have specified FTPS as the protocol type.

Connecting through a proxy or SOCKS server

Description

Use the **UseProxy** property to retrieve or set the value for the type of SOCKS or proxy server that is being (or should be) used. Since OFF is the default, you don't need UseProxy for regular connections which do not pass through proxy or SOCKS servers.

Syntax

```
String Object.UseProxy
```

Parameters

"OFF"	Direct connection without any socks and proxy
"SOCKS"	SOCKS server only - the user must specify the SOCKS parameters by setting the SocksInfo property
"PROXY"	Proxy server only - the user must specify the proxy server parameters by setting the ProxyInfo property
"BOTH"	Use both SOCKS and proxy - the user should specify the appropriate information for both the proxy and the socks server with ProxyInfo and SocksInfo.

Example

```
Object.UseProxy = "SOCKS" ‘specify that socks will be used, then configure SocksInfo
Object.SocksInfo = "socks5://globalscape.com:1080"
‘Rest of connection code follows...
```

Setting and retrieving proxy server configurations

Description

Use the **ProxyInfo** property to set or retrieve FTP and HTTP proxy server configurations. Do not use this function if you do not connect through a proxy server.

Authentication Parameters

"ftp://proxyusername:proxypassword@proxyhostname:proxyport"	For FTP proxies that require authentication.
"http://proxyusername:proxypassword@proxyhostname:proxyport"	For HTTP proxies that require authentication.
"ftp:// proxyhostname:proxyport"	For FTP proxies that don't require Authentication.
"http:// proxyhostname:proxyport"	For HTTP proxies that don't require Authentication.

Additional parameters

"proxyusername"	The user name for login to the proxy server
"proxypassword"	The password for login to the proxy server
"proxyhostname"	The proxy server address
"proxyport"	The proxy server connection port

Syntax

```
String Object.ProxyInfo
```

Example 1

```
MySite.ProxyInfo = http://globalscape.com:8000 'use http
proxy without authorization
```

Example 2

```
MySite.ProxyInfo =
ftp://joeuser:maypass@globalscape.com:21 'use ftp proxy
with authorization for user "joesuser" & password
"mypass"
```

Example 3

```
str = MySite.SocksInfo ‘retrieve the current value of
SocksInfo (empty if none)
MsgBox str ‘now display it
```

Setting or retrieving values for SOCKS servers

Description

Use the **SocksInfo** property to set or retrieve values for SOCKS4 or SOCKS5 servers. (SOCKS is a protocol for a TCP proxy across firewalls.)

Syntax

```
String Object.SocksInfo
```

Authentication Parameters

"socks4://socksusername:sockspassword@sockshostname:socksport"	For SOCKS4 servers that require authentication.
"socks5://socksusername:sockspassword@sockshostname:socksport"	For SOCKS5 servers that require authentication.
"socks4:// sockshostname:socksport"	For SOCKS4 servers that do not require authentication.
"socks5:// sockshostname:socksport"	For SOCKS5 servers that do not require authentication.

Additional parameters

"socksusername"	The user name or log in name to the SOCKS server.
"sockspassword"	The password for the SOCKS server.
"sockshostname"	The address and port for the SOCKS server.

Example 1

```
MySite.SocksInfo = "socks4//globalscape.com:1080" 'use
socks4 without authorization
```

Example 2

```
MySite.SocksInfo =
"socks5://joeuser:mypass@globalscape.com:1080" 'use
socks5 with authorization for user "joeuser" with
password "mypass"
```

Example 3

```
str = MySite.SocksInfo 'retrieve the current value of
SocksInfo (empty if none)
MsgBox str 'now display it
```

Choosing ASCII, binary, or auto transfer types

Description

Use the **TransferType** property to retrieve or set the value for the way the Transfer Engine should transfer files (ASCII, binary or auto).

Syntax

```
String Object.TransferType
```

Parameters

"ASCII"	All files should be transferred in ASCII mode
"BINARY"	All files should be transferred in BINARY mode
"AUTO" (default)	The TE will reference an internal list editable from CuteFTP's **Global Options** to determine the proper transfer type for that particular file. For example, if the ASCII list contains a filter mask of "txt" then all files with extension ".txt" will be transferred in ASCII. If a file doesn't correspond to any mask in this list then it will be transferred in binary mode.

Example

```
Object.TransferType = "AUTO" 'the Transfer Engine will use the shell's
default settings to establish whether the transfer should occur in binary or
ASCII. 'write file transfer code next...
```

Choosing a PASV or PORT connection

Description

Use the **DataChannel** property to set or retrieve values for the method in which the data port is established for the data channel (PASV or PORT). The default is PORT.

Syntax

```
String Object.DataChannel
```

Parameters

"PORT"	The client specifies what port to use for the data connection
"PASV"	Lets the server specify the port used for

	the data connection port
"DEFAULT"	Uses the method defined in **Global Options**

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.useProxy = "off"
MySite.DataChannel = "PASV"
MySite.RemoteCommand("LIST")
MySite.DataChannel = "PORT"
MySite.RemoteCommand("LIST")
MsgBox MySite.Log
```

Setting the number of retry attempts

Description

Use the **Retries** property to retrieve or set the value for the maximum number of attempts the Transfer Engine should make to connect to a remote host.

Syntax

```
int Object.Retries
```

Example

```
MySite.Retries = 10
```

> **Note:**
> Some older versions of CuteFTP Pro help files state that you can use the **Retries** property with transfers. That is incorrect, **Retries** only works with connections.

Setting the delay between retries

Description

Use the **Delay** property to set the delay between connection retry attempts (in seconds).

Syntax

```
int Object.Delay
```

Example

```
MySite.Delay = 90
```

> **Note:**
> Some older versions of the CuteFTP Pro help file state that you can use the **Delay** property with transfers. That is incorrect, you can only use **Delay** with connections.

Resolving or retrieving links

Description

Use the **Links** property to both set and retrieve values for working with links on a remote server.

Syntax

```
String Object.Links
```

Parameters

"Resolve"	The TE will attempt to resolve the link prior to transfer.
"GetAsFile"	The TE will assume it's a file and transfer as is (This is used to avoid endless loops in a large multi-directory transfer).

Example

```
MySite.Links = "Resolve"
```

Ignoring links

Description

Use the **IgnoreLinks** property when working with Unix servers. Use **IgnoreLinks** to set or retrieve the value that determines whether or not you want to bypass links.

Syntax

```
Bool Object.IgnoreLinks
```

Parameters

"True"	Skip symlinks during synchronization
"False"	Handle symlinks during synchronization as files or folders

Example

```
Mysite.IgnoreLinks = "False"
```

Choosing a local folder

Description

Use the **LocalFolder** property to retrieve or set the current folder on your local hard disk. You can use relative or absolute paths.

Syntax

```
String Object.LocalFolder
```

Example

```
Object.LocalFolder = "c:\temp"
```

Choosing a remote folder

Description

Use the **RemoteFolder** property to retrieve or set the current remote folder. You can use absolute or relative paths.

Syntax

```
String Object.RemoteFolder
```

Example

```
'Connect to site following previous samples
MySite.RemoteFolder = "/pub/cuteftp" 'Changes the remote folder to /pub/cuteftp (absolute paths used)
'subsequently
MySite.RemoteFolder = "test" 'Changes to the folder called "test" located in "/pub/cuteftp", using relative paths.
```

Using the auto-renaming feature in transfers

Description

Use the **AutoRename** property to set or retrieve the renaming values prior to the transfer of a file or folder. To configure the auto-rename rules open the CuteFTP Professional interface and go to **Tools > Global Options > Transfer > Rename Rules**.

Syntax

```
String MySite.AutoRename
```

Parameters

"ON"	AutoRename feature turned on
"OFF"	AutoRename feature turned off

Example

```
MySite.AutoRename = "ON"
```

Setting the maximum number of connections

Description

Use the **MaxConnections** property to set or retrieve the most connections the script is allowed to open.

Syntax

```
long Object.MaxConnections
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.MaxConnections = 1 'restrict connections to 1
```

Choosing to include or exclude subfolders in a task

Description

Use the **Recursive** property to set or retrieve the value that determines whether or not subfolders will be included in a transfer task. This property is used often in synchronization scripts.

Syntax

```
Bool Object.Recursive
```

Parameters

"True"	Include subfolders
"False"	Do not include subfolders

Example

```
Mysite.Recursive = "True"
```

Setting or retrieving other settings

Description

Use the **Option** property to set or retrieve various settings, such as Auto-rename, include folder names when filtering, cache invalidation, error handling, cleaning up of asynchronous tasks, and to auto-close prompts.

Syntax

```
String Object.Option("[option name]") = true | false
```

Parameters

"ThrowError"	(defaults to True) - TE COM will call AtlReportError (showing a VB runtime error message box) on connection/transfer/IO/other error which will terminate script execution. If set to False, then if some transfer method fails the script will continue to the next command.
"AutoRename"	(defaults to False) - The same as the AutoRename property.
"CleanupAsync"	(defaults to True) - All task IDs accumulated by previous Async methods will be lost. If set to False, all task IDs will be added to the ones created by previous Async methods.
"InvalidateCache"	(defaults to True) - Remove cached file (containing listings) before uploading, downloading, renaming or deleting files. If false, then don't remove cached listing. You can obtain the specific file information when needed by using one of the file property methods. InvalidateCache optimizes LIST traffic.
"FilterDirs"	(defaults to True) - Apply filters to folder names. If set to False, then don't apply.
"AutoCloseMethod"	(default to 0) 1 - auto accept, 2 - auto reject, 0 – Don't accept (default). This handles hidden prompts (such as SSL Accept Cert Prompt when running a script while not logged in).

"AutoCloseDelay"	(default value is 60 seconds). Time delay before CuteFTP should perform the action specified by the AutoCloseMethod option.

Example 1

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.Option("FilterDirs")=False          'don't filter
folder names
MySite.LocalFilterExclude= "TDImon; *.txt; *.vbs"
                                           'now set the
item names to exclude MySite.Upload "c:\test"
                                           'uploads all
of test including sub dirs.
                                           'Even sub dirs
that match the filter, such as TDIMon.
                                           'If I had left
FilterDirs=True, then the folter
                                           'TDImond would
not have been uploaded.
```

Example 2

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp://ftp.somestrangedomain.com"
MySite.Option("ThrowError") = false
if not CBool(MySite.Connect) then
  MsgBox "Error : " & MySite.ErrorDescription
end if
```

Example 3

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftps://ftp.asecuredomain.com"
MySite.Option("AutoCloseMethod") = 1  'will auto accept
cert and continue
MySite.Option("AutoCloseDelay") = 5   'wait 5 seconds
before accepting
MySite.Connect                        'now connect to the
secure site. The TE will accept the server's SSL cert
after 5 seconds and continue executing the rest of the
script.
```

READ-ONLY PROPERTIES

Checking for a connection

Description

Use the **IsConnected** property to indicate whether or not you are presently connected to the remote site.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.IsConnected
```

Parameters

"True"	The Transfer Engine is currently connected to the server.
"False"	The Transfer Engine is not currently connected to the server.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
If Cbool(MySite.IsConnected) Then
MsgBox "Connected to server:" + MySite.Host
End if
```

> **Note:**
> You can set how long the Transfer Engine will leave the data connection open after a completed transfer. In the CuteFTP GUI, go to **Tools > Global Options > Transfer Settings** and set the time in **Close the file transfer *n* seconds after the transfer is completed**.

Retrieving the number of Asynchronous tasks

Description

Use the **AsyncTaskNumber** property to return the number of tasks created by the UploadAsync, DownloadAsync and TransferURLAsync methods.

Syntax

```
Long Object.AsyncTaskNumber
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password,
etc.
MySite.Option("CleanupAsync") = False
MySite.DownloadAsync "/path/*.*"
MsgBox "task number created" & MySite.AsyncTaskNumber
```

Note:
You must set MySite.Option("CleanupAsync") = False so that all asynchronous tasks are counted. Otherwise, only the last asynchronous task launched will be referenced when calling the AsyncTaskNumber property.

Checking if a server supports multi-part uploads

Description

Use the **CombSupport** property to check if the server supports the COMB (multi-part upload) command.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.CombSupport
```

Return values

-1	Server supports COMB
0	Server does not support COMB

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name, user, password, etc.
If (not MySite.CombSupport) Then
MsgBox "This server doesn't support the COMB command!"
End if
```

Retrieving error descriptions

Description

Use the **ErrorDescription** property to get the string describing the last error condition. It may consist of some messages taken from the transfer log.

Syntax

```
String Object.ErrorDescription (long taskIdx)
```

Parameter

TaskIdx	This is a task index in the array of tasks created by the various asynchronous methods. The default value of taskIdx is - 1 which specifies all the asynchronous tasks in array. TaskIdx should be between 0 and AsyncTaskNumber minus one.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
```

```
MySite.Option("ThrowError") = false 'disable ATL
exceptions
if cbool(MySite.Connect) then
MsgBox "Connected OK"
else
MsgBox "Error! " & MySite.ErrorDescription
```

Retrieving the server's home directory

Description

Use the **HomeDir** property to return a string value containing the name of the server's home directory.

Syntax

```
String Object.HomeDir
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
MsgBox "Home dir for server " + MySite.Host + " is: " +
MySite.HomeDir
```

Checking if a transfer is active

Description

Use the **IsPending** property to determine whether a transfer is active or if it is already finished with success or error. This can be useful in combination with async commands or during an interactive script. The **IsPending** property will return a value of either true or false.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.IsPending(long taskIdx)
```

Parameter

TaskIdx	This is a task index in the array of tasks created by the various asynchronous methods. [0.. AsyncTaskNumber minus one, or - 1 (last asynchronous task started)] This has a default value (if nothing is specified) of ALL tasks. Therefore, IsPending will return true if any task is still pending. It will return false if none are pending.

Example 1

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
'Regular connection code here:
MySite.Download inbound/*.*", "c:\temp"
If CBool(MySite.IsPending) Then
```

```
MsgBox "task is in working state" + MySite.Host
End if
```

Example 2

Here is another example that checks an asynchronous transfer and will return various transfer progress properties of each transfer while IsPending is true.

> **Warning:**
> If you copy and paste this code, be aware that line breaks may be inserted into the code.

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Protocol = "FTP"
MySite.Port = "21"
MySite.Host = "ftp.url"
MySite.login = "loginname"
MySite.Password = "your pass"
MySite.Connect
MySite.Option("CleanupAsync") = False
' line break
strNL = (Chr(13) & Chr(10))
MySite.MaxConnections = 3
MySite.Option("ThrowError") = false
MySite.DownloadAsync "inbound/*.*", "c:\temp"
bContinue = true
while CBool(MySite.IsPending) and bContinue
str = "LOOP, Total: " & MySite.AsyncTaskNumber & strNL
for i = 0 to MySite.AsyncTaskNumber - 1 step 1
str = str & i & ": size: " & MySite.TransferredSize(i) &
", speed: " & MySite.Speed(i) & ", time left: " &
MySite.TimeLeft(i) & ", status: " & MySite.Status(i) &
strNL
next
str = str & "YES - continue loop, NO - stop tasks, CANCEL
- exit loop"
nUserChoise = MsgBox(str, vbYesNocancel) 'press YES many
time to see transfer progresses
if nUserChoise = vbCancel then
bContinue = false
elseif nUserChoise = vbNO then
```

```
MySite.AbortAsync 'abort all tasks
bContinue = false
end if
wend
str = "DONE, Total: " & MySite.AsyncTaskNumber & strNL
for i = 0 to MySite.AsyncTaskNumber - 1 step 1
str = str & i & ": size: " & MySite.TransferredSize(i) &
", speed: " & MySite.Speed(i) & ", time left: " &
MySite.TimeLeft(i) & ", status: " & MySite.Status(i) &
strNL
next
MsgBox str
```

Retrieving the status of a transfer

Description

Use the **Status** property to determine whether a transfer is active or it is already finished with success or error. This can be useful in combination with asynchronous commands or during an interactive script. The **Status** property will return a string.

Syntax

String Object.Status (long taskIdx)

Parameters

TaskIdx	This is the task index in the array of tasks created by asynchronous methods [0.. AsyncTaskNumber or - 1 (last started)]

Return Values

"WAIT"	Transfer action invoked but not initiated yet (followed by connecting)
"CANCELED"	Active transfer canceled by user
"FINISHED"	Transfer completed
"ERROR"	Error in transfer (any possible client or server error)
"SUSPENDED"	Added to queue but no transfer initiated yet
"SCHEDULED"	Item is scheduled for future transfer
"BLOCKED"	An internal status used for navigation and does not pertain to active or pending transfers. You can cancel

	any transfer requests in BLOCKED status without any ill effects.
"CHILDWAIT"	Condition when transfer item is waiting for a dependant item to finish transferring (*)
"SKIPPED"	Transfer skipped by user or automatically per overwrite rules
"CONNECTING"	Connecting to server (status right after WAIT)
"CANCELLING"	Cancel initiated but not completely stopped yet
"WORKING"	After connecting but before transferring. Could be opening data connection, or setting REST params, etc.
"TRANSFERRING"	File transfer in progress
"UNKNOWN"	Another string was returned other than one of the above. The string was unrecognized.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
If not CBool(MySite.IsPending) Then
MsgBox "Task done, final status is " + MySite.Status
End if
```

Checking if a server can resume downloads

Description

Use the **RestSupport** property to check if the server supports the REST (resume download) command.

Syntax

```
Boolean Object.RestSupport
```

Return values

-1	Server supports REST.
0	Server does not support REST.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
```

```
'Initialize all necessary fields for MySite : host name,
user, password, etc.
If (not cbool(MySite.RestSupport)) Then
MsgBox "This server doesn't support the REST command"
End if
```

Retrieving a log as a string

Description

Use the **Log** property to return the entire log as a string which can be handled separately in your VB application or VB script.

Syntax

```
String Object.Log (long taskIdx)
```

Parameters

TaskIdx	This is the task index in the array of tasks created by asynchronous methods [0.. AsyncTaskNumber minus one, or - 1 (last asynchronous task started)] It has a default value of -1 = current task.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = "ftp://ftp.cuteftp.com"
MySite.Connect
MsgBox MySite.Log
```

Checking transfer progress

Description

Use the **TotalSize, TransferredSize, Speed, TimeLeft,** and **TimeElapsed** properties to determine a transfer's progress and various other aspects of the transfer.

Syntax

```
long Object.TotalSize (long taskIdx) = size in bytes
long Object.TransferredSize (long taskIdx) = size in
bytes
long Object.Speed (long taskIdx) = bytes/second
long Object.TimeLeft (long taskIdx) = seconds
long Object.TimeElapsed (long taskIdx) =seconds
```

Parameters

TaskIdx	This is the task index in the array of tasks created by asynchronous methods [0.. AsyncTaskNumber minus one, or - 1 (last asynchronous task started)] It has a default value of - 1 = current task.

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Host = host 'set all relavant host, login, pass, etc. properties
MySite.Download "aaa", "c:\temp"
MsgBox "Size: " & MySite.TotalSize & ", speed: " & MySite.Speed & ", time: " & MySite.TimeElapsed
```

Retrieving file information

Description

Use the **FileType, FileSize,** and **FileTimeModified** properties to retrieve information about a particular item.

Syntax

```
long Object.FileType
long Object.FileSize
string Object.FileTimeModified
```

Return values

For FileType:

1	Directory
2	File
3	Link

For FileSize:

the size in bytes of the file

For FileTimeModfied:

mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss

Example

```
Set fserv = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
strRemote = "somefilename.ext"
if cbool(fserv.RemoteExists(strRemote)) then
MsgBox "Remote file/folder info: Type=" & fserv.FileType & ", Size=" & fserv.fileSize & ", Date=" & fserv.FileTimeModified & strNL & "(type:1-dir,2-file,3-link)"
else
MsgBox "Error! " & fserv.ErrorDescription
End If
```

FILTER PROPERTIES

Including local files in lists and transfers

Description

Use the **LocalFilterInclude** property to set or retrieve the values for including local files or folders in transfers and listings. The string values may contain wildcards and you can add multiple filters by separating them with a semicolon **";"**.

Syntax

```
String Object.LocalFilterInclude
```

Example

```
MySite.LocalFilterInclude = "*.jpg;*.gif"
```

> **Note:**
> If filter causes no file to be transferred then no folders will be created.

Excluding local files from lists and transfers

Description

Use the **LocalFilterExclude** property to set and retrieve the values for excluding local files or folders from transfers and listings. The string values may contain wildcards and you can add multiple filters by separating them with a semicolon.

Syntax

```
String Object.LocalFilterExclude
```

Example

```
MySite.LocalFilterExclude = "*.mp3;*.jpg"
```

> **Note:**
> If filter causes no file to be transferred then no folders will be created.

Excluding remote files from lists and transfers

Description

Use the **RemoteFilterExclude** property to set and retrieve the values for excluding remote files or folders from transfers and listings. The string values may contain wildcards and you can add multiple filters by separating them with a semicolon.

Syntax

```
String Object.RemoteFilterExclude
```

Example

```
MySite.RemoteFilterExclude = "*.txt;*.swp"
MySite.Download "*.*" ‘ will download all files except
those with extensions of *.txt and *.swp
```

> **Note:**
> If filter causes no file to be transferred then no folders will be created.

Including remote files in lists and transfers

Description

Use the **RemoteFilterInclude** property to set or retrieve the values used to include remote files or folders in transfers and listings. The string values may contain wildcards and you can add multiple filters by separating them with a semicolon ";".

Syntax

```
String Object.RemoteFilterInclude
```

Example

```
MySite.RemoteFilterInlcude = "*.jpg;*.gif"
```

> **Note:**
> If filter causes no file to be transferred then no folders will be created.

Adding filters to the LIST command

Description

Use the **RemoteSiteFilter** property to specify a string which will be used as a filter parameter by the LIST command.

Syntax

```
string Object. RemoteSiteFilter
```

Example

```
Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite. RemoteSiteFilter = "-l"
'This will send a "List -l" command to the server.
```

Configuration Notes

These optional parameters to the list command are basically parameters passed to the UNIX ls program running on the server (if applicable):

-l	long listing
-a	show hidden files
-t	sort by timestamp
-R	recursive

There are various additional parameters. Refer to a UNIX manual or the Web for more details. You may want to check http://www.bsdi.com/bsdi-man.

Troubleshooting

DISABLING PROMPTS

To run the Transfer Engine with prompts disabled

Launch the TE manually and supply the –noprompts parameter.

Example

1. From theWindows **Start** menu, choose **Run**.
2. Enter: **"C:\Program Files\Globalscape\CuteFTP Professional\TE\ftpte.exe" –noprompts**.
3. Select **OK**.

Warning:
Suppressing prompts may cause lockups if no default action is available for the event in question, or if the prompt was produced by an error. When running the TE in this mode using Windows scheduler from a different user account, the TE will not be accessible from its COM or GUI interface and can only be unloaded via the Task Manager.
The best way to avoid prompts is to properly configure the TE ahead of time to cover all possible prompt scenarios, such as overwrite conditions, or SSL server certificate acceptance dialogs. For example, set your overwrite actions under CuteFTP's global settings to Always Overwrite to avoid any overwrite prompts, or pre-define various rules to cover various overwrite scenarios. You can then export those rules as registry entries and import them onto the target machine.
You can also tell the TE to auto-accept SSL or SSH certificates using the AutoCloseMethod parameter of the Option method. Also refer to the following trouble shooting topic regarding running the TE while not logged in.

HIGH MEMORY USAGE WHEN USING THE TRANSFER ENGINE

If you leave the Transfer Engine running for extended lengths of time, it may begin to consume large amounts of memory. Set the CuteFTP Professional Transfer Engine to remove successful items from the queue to avoid this problem.

To remove successful items from the queue in a script

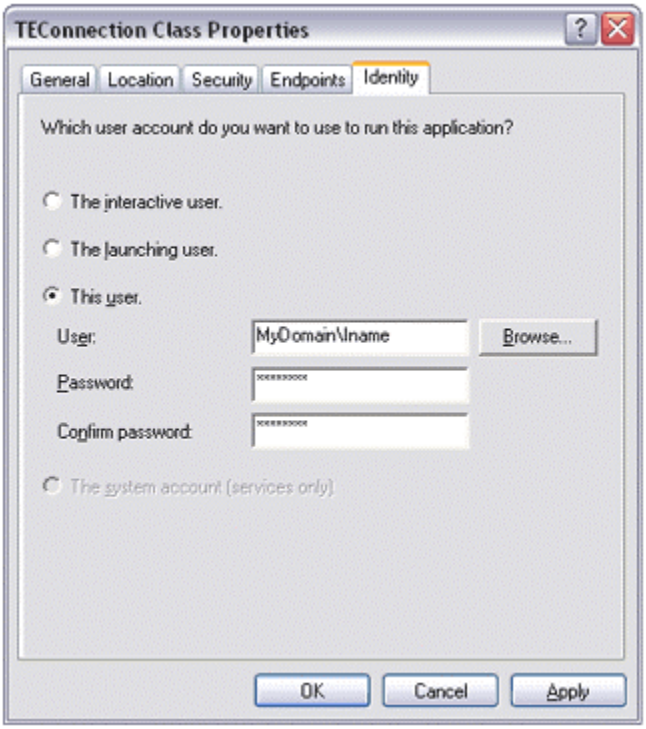
- Use the TECommand method with the DELETEFINISHED or DELETEALL parameter.

SETTING THE TE TO RUN WITHOUT A USER PRESENT

The Transfer Engine is a process, not a service. However, you can execute scripts while the system is not logged in if you properly configure Windows DCOM configuration for the Transfer Engine. Carefully read and follow the steps below. A sample script is provided.

To configure the TE under the DCOM configuration applet

1. Frpm Windows, choose **Start > Run**.
3. Enter **DCOMCNFG** and select **OK**.
4. Select **TE** from the list.
5. Select **Properties**.
6. Select the **Identity** tab.
7. You must select **This user:** and provide a valid login name and password. *It must be the same user as established under your task scheduler's* **run as** property (if applicable), so that the scheduler service can call the COM object as a user. This will enable the Transfer Engine to run with the user settings, and if necessary, access pre-established SSL certificates (for secure connections).



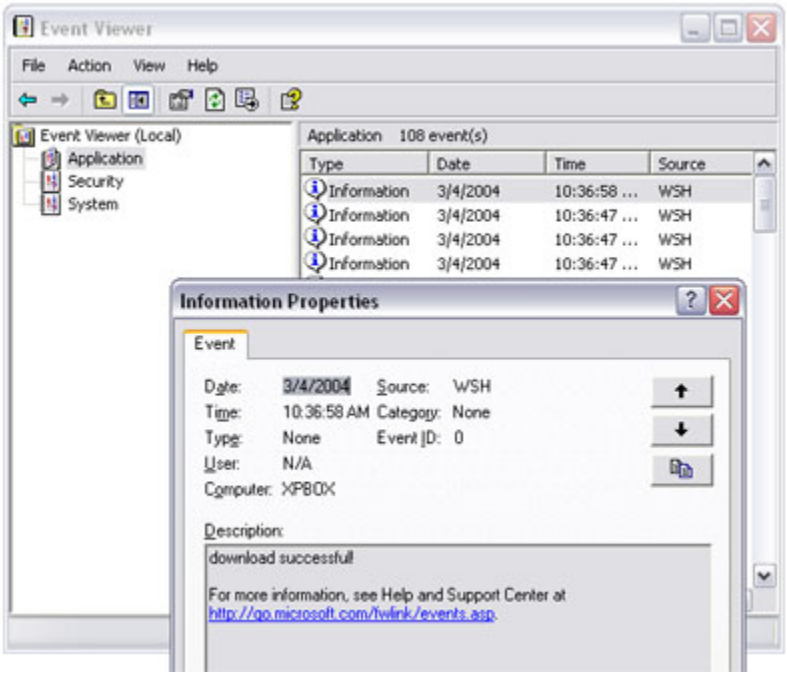
Screenshot of Identity tab

Configuration notes

- If the system is currently logged in when the TE is run, it runs as the user which you specified under DCOMCNFG. You will not see the TE icon in the system tray when running CuteFTP's main interface. Also, the hard coded user's settings are employed when the TE is run, not those of the currently logged in user. This is not an issue if you are running the TE while the system is not logged in.

- You should test your script from the command line while logged in. You can also write to the event viewer or a local text file to debug a script when run on system startup if necessary. Here is a sample script which includes event viewer logging of transactions.
- Your script should not contain Message Box functions or any other function that requires user input or shows a window. Windows cannot display these prompts while the system is not logged in. Set your overwrite actions under CuteFTP's global options to "Always Overwrite" to avoid any overwrite prompts, or pre-define various rules to cover various overwrite scenarios.

```
Const EVENT_SUCCESS = 0
Set objShell = Wscript.CreateObject("Wscript.Shell")
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS,"AT Loaded me"
Set MySite= CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Option ("ThrowError") = False
MySite.Host =
"ftp://anonymous:user@user.com@ftp.globalscape.com/pub
/cuteftp"
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS,"vars set"
MySite.Connect
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS, "connected"
MySite.Download "index.txt", "c:\temp"
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS, "downloaded"
MySite.Disconnect
MySite.Close
```



The Event View Application Log showing a successful download.

AUTOMATICALLY ENCRYPTING AND COMPRESSING TRANSFERS

To automatically encrypt and compress files before transfer, you will need both CuteZIP and CuteFTP Professional. You can also compress and encrypt files after transferring them by using GlobalSCAPE Secure FTP Server's Custom Site Commands. The benefits of encrypting files prior or post transfer depends on the circumstances and level of trust for the particular host.

In the example script below, an entire folder (including sub-folders) is compressed, encrypted (using Twofish 128 bit encryption) and then transferred via regular FTP to an FTP server. Since the archived file is encrypted, there is no need to connect using SSL, OTP, or SSH2 unless you wished to also protect the login process.

Example

```
Dim WshShell, MySite, Return
Set WshShell = CreateObject("WScript.Shell") 'Window's
Scripting Host shell object
'next line calls the run method of the WSH shell object.
It returns true once CuteZIP does its thing.
'The complete command line instructions for CuteZIP are
located here.
If Return = WshShell.run
("c:\progra~1\global~1\CuteZIP\cutezip.exe -c -p12345
c:\archive c:\temp", 0, true) Then
  Set MySite = CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
```

```
  MySite.Option ("ThrowError") = True
  MySite.Host = "ftp://user:pass@myftpsite.com" 'one of
the ways to connect using the TE
  MySite.Connect
  MySite.Upload "c:\archive.zip" 'upload the new archive,
then check to see if it made it up to the server.
  if not CBool(MySite.RemoteExists("\archive.zip")) then
     MsgBox "Failed to Upload, Exiting!"
  Else
     MsgBox "Success!"
  End If
  MySite.Disconnect
  MySite.Close
Else
MsgBox "Compression and Encryption Failed, Exiting!"
End If
```

Note:
You can optionally protect the FTP login by connecting with SSL, SSH2 or OTP using CuteFTP Professional's Transfer Engine (GlobalSCAPE's Secure FTP Server 2 supports SSL, OTP, and SSH2 logins). Use the protocol property to set the connection type prior to calling MySite.Host and MySite.Connect.

RUNNING THE TRANSFER ENGINE FROM AN SQL JOB

You can use SGL function sp_OACreate to create a TEConnection object. SQL runs ftpte and hides all windows. SQL uses a special instance of ftpte exe, which cannot prompt for user name and password.

Specify a local download path or filename. While optional, it's a good idea to make sure that it is going where you intend. Also, make sure that the local path has the appropriate NTFS permissions to allow the TE to have full control.

For scripted or scheduled tasks use an otherwise unused account for scheduled TE tasks. Once the CuteFTP TE (transfer engine) is started, another instance cannot be created. Windows treats the logged-in user differently than the logged-out-user and DCOM errors may occur. For instance, if a recurring background process has already run before the user logs in, once the user logs in and the background process starts again, a DCOM error will occur.

Example transfer script

```
DECLARE @property varchar(255)
DECLARE @object int
```

```
DECLARE @hr int
DECLARE @src varchar(255), @desc varchar(255)
PRINT '---start'
EXEC @hr = sp_OACreate 'CuteFTPPro.TEConnection', @object
OUT
EXEC @hr = sp_OASetProperty @object, 'Host',
'ftp.mysite.com'
EXEC @hr = sp_OAGetProperty @object, 'Host', @property OUT
PRINT @property
EXEC @hr = sp_OAGetProperty @object, 'Login', @property
OUT
PRINT @property
EXEC @hr = sp_OAGetProperty @object, 'Protocol', @property
OUT
PRINT @property
EXEC @hr = sp_OAMethod @object, 'Connect'
EXEC @hr = sp_OAMethod @object, 'download', NULL, '/pub',
"e:/eee"
EXEC @hr = sp_OAGetProperty @object, 'Log', @property OUT
PRINT @property
EXEC @hr = sp_OADestroy @object
PRINT '---finish'
```

Configuration Notes

- SQL cannot use an already running instance of ftpte exe. The CuteFTP GUI cannot communicate with an ftpte instance created by SQL.
- When a scheduled task runs as user X while user X is logged in, the profile path will be set to that user's directory (C:\Documents and Settings\X\). However, when a scheduled task runs as user X while user X is *not* logged in, the profile path will be set to the default user directory (C:\Documents and Settings\Default User\). Therefore, the desired SSL certificates from C:\Documents and Settings\X\Application Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Professional\certs.crt should be copied to C:\Documents and Settings\Default User\Application Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Professional\certs.crt
- If you use **UseProxy**, be sure to specify any proxy information. Please see Connecting through a SOCKS or Proxy Server for more information.

Tips

- Add a couple of log lines so that it can write to the log whenever something happens successfully. Add it after the connect line, so that you can see how far it gets.
- To make sure you are connecting long enough to get data, use the **GetList** method to write a list to a local file.

NO TIMEOUT WHEN CONNECTING TO AN UNAVAILABLE HOST

If the Transfer Engine's Connection method refuses to timeout when connecting to a non-existing or temporarily unavailable host, try setting the throw error to true. The Connection method does not have a built-in timeout value. It will keep trying to connect indefinitely. Because the event is synchronous, subsequent lines in the script, including conditional statements for determining the connection status of the TE, never get called.

Examples:

A few possible workarounds, and help for accepting and rejecting certificates:

```
MySite.Option("AutoCloseMethod") = 2 '1 - auto accept, 2 - auto reject, 0 - default no auto
MySite.Option("AutoCloseDelay") = 12 ' default value is 60 sec
Set Option("AutoCloseMethod") property to 1 or 2 in order for script can continue its processing:
MySite.Option("AutoCloseMethod") = 1 will auto accept cert and continue
MySite.Option("AutoCloseMethod") = 2 will auto reject cert and finish with error
MySite.Option("AutoCloseMethod") = 0 default: will not close prompt on timeout
```

TIMEOUT STRATEGIES FOR THE WAIT METHOD

The default timeout value for the **Wait** method is 21,805,184 milliseconds, which is approximately 6 hours. The timeout value is a SIGNED LONG data type, meaning its maximum possible value is 2,147,483,647 milliseconds, which is roughly 596.5 hours or just under 25 days. This is probably enough time for even the slowest transfer.

The **Wait** method supports a "0" timeout value which means "keep waiting forever or until the transfer reaches a state of CANCELED, FINISHED, ERROR, SUSPENDED, SKIPPED, or BLOCKED."

You can also write scripts so that they check the condition of a transfer and if it is still in the "TRANSFERRING" state, to wait on it again.

Three timeout strategies for long transfer tasks

1. **Specify a large timeout value in the script call -** Because the first parameter to the **Wait** method is a task index, this example uses a "-1" which means "current task." For this example, the timeout is set for 10 hours or, 10 * 60 * 60 * 1000 = 36000000 milliseconds.

Example

```
strResult = strataFTP.Wait( -1, 36000000 )
```

2. **After a Wait() function has timed out, check the STATUS of the transfer -** In this scenario, use the program (or script) logic to keep trying after a **Wait** times out when the transfer is still in the TRANSFERRING state. In other words, your polling for the termination status has timed out, but not necessarily the transfer itself, so you keep going.
   In the following example, you wait up to 10 hours for the transfer, and if that times out, you check the status of the transfer. If it is still TRANSFERRING, you do it again (please note the last two conditional statements):

Example

```
  Do
     strResult = strataFTP.Wait( -1, 36000000 )
   Loop While ( strResult <> "CANCELED") and ( strResult <>
"FINISHED" ) and
        ( strResult <> "ERROR" ) and ( strResult <>
"SKIPPED" ) and
        ( strResult <> "SUSPENDED" ) and ( strResult <>
"BLOCKED" )
```

Alternatively, you can take the more positive outlook of continuing on while the transfer task is either WORKING, CONNECTING, or TRANSFERRING:

Example

```
 Do
     strResult = strataFTP.Wait( -1, 36000000 )
   Loop While ( strResult = "TRANSFERRING") or ( strResult
= "WORKING" ) or
        ( strResult = "CONNECTING" )
```

3. Wait forever, or until the transfer reaches some termination point. Most transfers eventually either FINISH or receive an error from the server; but there is a minor chance that the transfer in the queue is perpetually stuck in a "TRANSFERRING" state. This strategy might be considered a little riskier than the first two:

Example

```
    strResult = strataFTP.Wait( -1, 0 )
```

MY SCHEDULED SCRIPTS NO LONGER RUN WHILE NOT LOGGED IN

If you have installed the Security Update for Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC) Security Patch MS03-033 you may have problems using scripts to connect to secure sites.

You can get your scripts to work again by moving your certificate file. The CuteFTP certificate files generally reside in a specific user's folder, like: `C:\Documents and Settings\jsmith\Application Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Professional\Security\certs.crt`.

Move the certs.crt file to the Default User Folder. For example; `C:\Documents and Settings\Default User\Application Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Professional\Security\certs.crt`, and your scripts should now work.

> **Note:**
> The file name for Security Patch MS03-033 is `Q823718_MDAC_SecurityPatch.exe`.

SCRIPTING TECHNICAL SUPPORT

- Due to the wide range of scripts that CuteFTP Professional is able to accommodate we are unable to offer technical support on individual scripts, other than what is available in the help files and online Knowledge Base.
- If you are having trouble with your script, try to perform the desired action manually, using the CuteFTP GUI. If you cannot, then troubleshoot that problem first and then re-try your script.
- If you are able to perform the desired actions, and in the desired sequence when using the GUI, then the problem is not with CuteFTP or the FTP Server. The next thing to do is to troubleshoot your script line by line.

HANDLING SSL CERTIFICATES (WHEN RUNNING A SCRIPT WHILE NOT LOGGED IN)

Setting up the TE to connect to an FTP server over SSL (via scripting) involves several steps. Follow the instructions below carefully.

You must know whether the TE will require the use of server certificates only, or both server and client certificates.

Server Certificates

Most FTP SSL servers will provide a certificate to the client during authentication. The certificate proves the server's legitimacy to the client. The server's certificate must be added the client's Trusted Certificate store prior to any connection, otherwise the TE will lock up when trying to authenticate.

1. Export or obtain a copy of the server's certificate from the FTP server administrator. Otherwise connect to the server with the CuteFTP GUI (interface) from the developer machine and manually accept the server's certificate. You can then export it from the Trusted List under **Global Options > Security > SSL Security** to a staging directory of your choice.
2. Place/Install the certificate into the target machine's Default User directory. For example:

   ```
   C:\Documents and Settings\Default User\Application Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Pro\Security
   ```

3. If you will also be running the TE while logged in, place a copy of the server certificate under the USER folder on the target machine, as follows:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\[USERNAME]\Application
Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Pro\Security
- where [USERNAME] is the login name for the user.
```

4. Configurel the TE to auto-accept SSL or SSH certificates using the AutoCloseMethod parameter of the Option method. Also refer to the following trouble shooting topic regarding running the TE while not logged in.

Now when you connect, the TE sees the server's certificate and proceed with the connection.

Client Certificates

Some FTP SSL servers require that the client provide a certificate. The certificate proves the veracity of the client and is an important factor in weeding out spurious FTP clients masquerading as legitimate ones.

To setup the target system to use client certificates

1. On the developer machine, create the client certificate and private key pair using the CuteFTP GUI (interface). The certificate creation utility is located under the **Tools > Global Settings > Security > SSL** dialog.
2. Add the client certificate to the server's trusted list. Do this by connecting to the server with the CuteFTP GUI (interface) from the developer machine. On the server, move the certificate from the Pending to the Trusted list. If your server only has a Trusted list, manually import the client certificate into the Trusted list.
3. Place the client certificate and private key into the target machine's USER folder:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\[USERNAME]\Application
Data\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP Pro\Security
```

- where [USERNAME] is the login name for the user.

4. If you created the certificate set on the developer machine, export the following registry key:

```
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP
Professional\Settings\SecuritySSL
```

5. Import the registry key from step 4 onto the target machine, or manually create the necessary entries. The entries are shown in standard .reg file notation.

```
REGEDIT4
[HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\GlobalSCAPE\CuteFTP
Pro\Settings\SecuritySSL]
"SSLCertificate"="C:\\Documents and
Settings\\[USERNAME]\\Application
Data\\GlobalSCAPE\\CuteFTP Pro\\Security\\client.crt"
"SSLPrivateKey"="C:\\Documents and
Settings\\[USERNAME]\\Application
Data\\GlobalSCAPE\\CuteFTP Pro\\Security\\client.key"
"UseSSLCertificate"=dword:00000001
"UseSSLCertPassphrase"=dword:00000001
"ReuseSSLData"=dword:00000000
```

```
"WarnWhenToNonSecure"=dword:00000001
"DataTransportMethod"=dword:00000001
"SSLCertPassphrase"="[PASSWORD]"
```

- Where [USERNAME] is the login name for the target system and where [PASSWORD] is the encrypted password exported from the source machine. *Don't modify the password!*

At the next connection, the TE finds the client certificate and uses it to authenticate with the server.

Example

Here is a sample script that connects to a fictitious site running SSL Implicit over port 990. It also writes to the event log for debugging purposes. if you use this script to test your setup, make sure you modify the MySite.Host line to include your actual FTP SSL server host and login information.

```
#file test.vbs
Const EVENT_SUCCESS = 0
Set objShell = Wscript.CreateObject("Wscript.Shell")
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS,"AT Loaded me"
Set MySite= CreateObject("CuteFTPPro.TEConnection")
MySite.Option ("ThrowError") = True
MySite.Host =
"ftp://myuser:mypass@ftp.mysslserver.com:990
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS,"vars set"
MySite.Connect
objShell.LogEvent EVENT_SUCCESS, "connected"
MySite.Disconnect
MySite.Close
```

13

Troubleshooting

Error Resolution

USING ERROR MESSAGES TO TROUBLESHOOT

You can help resolve errors by recording information from error messages. A standard error dialog box includes a short error message and two buttons, **Cancel** and **Details**. Click **Cancel** to dismiss the error dialog box. Click **Details** to expand the error dialog to show more information.

To use an error message to troubleshoot

1. Record the error message and what occurred previous to the error.
2. Click the **Details** button.
3. Right-click in the log text area.
4. Choose **Copy All Text**. The entire contents of the error log window will be copied to the clipboard.
5. Paste this information into an email asking for help, and send it to your IS department, or paste it directly into the **Description** field at the GlobalSCAPE tech support email page to ask for help from GlobalSCAPE's tech support staff.

FTP STATUS AND ERROR NUMBERS

CuteFTP displays FTP status codes in the log window. The codes are numbered according to their category. Some codes represent errors, while most codes simply communicate the status of the connection. Here are brief explanations for the most common status and error codes:

Code	Description
100 Series	**The requested action is being initiated, expect another reply before proceeding with a new command.**
110	Restart marker reply.
120	Service ready in *nn* minutes.
125	Data Connection already open, transfer starting.
150	File status okay, about to open data connection.

Code	Description
200 Series	**The requested action has been successfully completed.**
200	Command okay.
202	Command not implemented, superfluous at this site.
211	System status, or system help reply.
212	Directory status.
213	File status.
214	Help message.
215	NAME system type. (Where NAME is an official system name from the list in the Assigned Numbers document.)
220	Service ready for new user.
221	Service closing control connection. Logged out if appropriate.
225	Data connection open; no transfer in progress.
226	Closing data connection. Requested file action successful (for example; file transfer or file abort).
227	Entering Passive Mode.
230	User logged in, proceed.
250	Requested file action okay, completed.
257	"PATHNAME" created.
300 Series	**The command has been accepted, but the requested action is on hold, pending receipt of further information.**
331	User name okay, need password.
332	Need account for login.
350	Requested file action pending further information.

Code	Description
400 Series	**The command was not accepted and the requested action did not take place, but the error condition is temporary and the action may be requested again.**
421	Error 421 Service not available, closing control connection. Error 421 User limit reached Error 421 You are not authorized to make the connection Error 421 Max connections reached Error 421 Max connections exceeded **Possible Solutions** You can receive that 421 error if the FTP server you are connected to limits the total number of connections available or limits the connections available to one user. There are three things you can do: 1. Limit the number of connections to any one FTP site by selecting **Tools > Global Options > Connection** and set "Per site max connections /transfers" to 1 (By default it will be set to 2). 2. Remove items from the Transfer Queue. The Transfer Queue is where you see items ready for transfer, in transit, or just transferred. Sometimes the Queue Pane can become cluttered with unfinished transfers. To clear the queue, right-click inside it and choose **Remove All**. 3. Make sure only one instance of CuteFTP is running on your system. Open the Windows Task Manager and see if CuteFTP is listed more than once.
425	Can't open data connection. *Try changing from PASV to PORT mode. Check your firewall settings. Try making an HTTP connection.*
426	Connection closed; transfer aborted.
450	Requested file action not taken. File unavailable (e.g., file busy).
451	Requested action aborted: local error in processing.
452	Requested action not taken. Insufficient storage space in system.
500 Series	**The command was not accepted and the requested action did not take place.**
501	Syntax error in parameters or arguments.
502	Command not implemented. The server does not support this command.
503	Bad sequence of commands.

Code	Description
504	Command not implemented for that parameter.
530	Not logged in. *Your password is being rejected, contact the server administrator.*
532	Need account for storing files.
550	Requested action not taken. File unavailable (e.g., file not found, no access). *Contact the server administrator.*
552	Requested file action aborted. Exceeded storage allocation (for current directory or data set). *Contact the server administrator.*
553	Requested action not taken. File name not allowed. *Try changing the file name, or getting rid of spaces in the file name.*
10,000 series	**Winsock error codes**
10054	Connection reset by peer. The connection was forcibly closed by the remote host.
10060	Can't connect to remote server (Generally a time-out error). *Try switching from PASV to PORT mode, or try increasing the time-out value* (*See Reconnect and resume in Transfer settings).*
10061	Can't connect to remote server. The connection is actively refused by the server. *Try switching the connection port.*
10066	Directory not empty. The server will not delete this directory while there are files/folders in it.
10068	Too many users, server is full. *Try connecting later. If the problem persists, Contact the server administrator.*

CANNOT CLOSE DATA TRANSFER GRACEFULLY

If the error message "Cannot close data transfer gracefully" is generated after a download is complete, it indicates that CuteFTP has received all the data it needs, but the server is still sending information. Since that data is still transmitting, CuteFTP forces the connection to close.

CANNOT INITIATE DATA TRANSFER

If you receive this error from a server it could be one of these problems:

- The site you are trying to log into requires a special user name and or password in order to transfer files.
  - Contact the administrator of the site, and find out if you need to be using a special user name or password, and whether or not you can access that site.
- The permissions on the site are incorrect, so even though your user name and password are correct, you are unable to upload or download.

  - Contact the administrator of the site, and make sure that your user name and password have read and write permissions set correctly.
- You cannot upload because the server you are sending to is full, and will not allow more files to be uploaded.
  - Delete files that are no longer used, or ask the administrator for more space on the system.
- The file name you are using has a space or a character that the server will not allow.
  - Double-check with the administrator of your site about which characters are accepted on your server, and rename the files to an acceptable name.
- A communication error is occurring between the FTP host and your computer, making data transfer impossible.
  - If CuteFTP has worked in the past, change nothing and wait a little while to see if the problem is caused by Internet traffic. If this is the first time you are trying to connect, try using the other hosts types rather than Auto-detect.

CANNOT RESOLVE HOST NAME MESSAGE

The **Cannot Resolve Host Name** message is displayed when CuteFTP cannot make a connection to the FTP Host Address that you specified when you set up the connection. It could be compared to browsing to a Web site that either is not up at the moment, or does not exist. There are several ways to approach this situation:

- Make sure you are connected to the Internet. If you are not connected to the Internet, you will need to connect before you can connect to any FTP sites.
- Make sure you typed in the **FTP Host Address** correctly. This would be just the host address of the server. For example, if you were given an FTP Host Address in the format: ftp://ftp.yourhost.com, you would only type in ftp.yourhost.com. Also be sure there is nothing after the host address, especially slashes ("/") indicating subdirectories. If the server does not automatically put you in your default directory when you log in to it, then you can add the directory into the "Default Remote Directory" box when configuring this site.
- If you have a firewall or proxy server, make sure CuteFTP is properly configured to work with the proxy server. You can edit the firewall or proxy settings by clicking **Tools > Global Options** and expanding **Connection** and selecting **Proxy Server**. If you are not sure what the settings for the proxy should be, you will need to contact your network or system administrator for that information.

If all of these options fail and you still have the same results, you will need to contact the server administrator of the site you are connecting to in order to resolve the problem.

CHILD TRANSFER FAILED

If you attempt to transfer a folder or directory and see this error, it simply means that an item or items within the folder failed to transfer. You can check your connection log to find a more detailed error describing why the item failed to transfer.

NOT ENOUGH CREDITS TO DOWNLOAD

You may not be able to download from some FTP sites until you have uploaded something to them. In other words, you have to give them a file before they give you one -- a type of file trading. Most of these "ratio sites" have a text file that explains how to upload files to them and get credits. If you have any problems, contact the administrator of the site.

PERMISSION DENIED

If you receive this message, your server administrator has not established your permissions correctly. You will need to call the server administrator to reset the permissions. Every time an FTP account (for uploading your Web pages) is opened, your server determines all the things that you are allowed to do, like upload, download, write to a file, delete a file, make new directories, etc. If permissions have not been set up correctly, it will cause these types of problems.

If any transaction you try with CuteFTP doesn't seem to be accomplished, refer to the log (the lower part of the remote pane in the CuteFTP Professional window, and the top window in CuteFTP Home) for any entries that are colored red or any message boxes that appear indicating a potential problem on your server's end.

PORT ALREADY IN USE ERROR WITH DIAL-UP VPN

If you are connecting to a Virtual Private Network through a modem and receive the **Port already in use** error when trying to connect, do the following:

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. In the left pane, expand **Connection**.
3. Select **DUN/LAN**
4. In the right pane choose **Connect to the Internet using a LAN**. CuteFTP uses the existing connection.
5. Select **OK**.

SHELL CANNOT GET DATA FROM TE

If you see this error, there is not enough space in your Temp folder to run CuteFTP.

To correct the error

- Make sure the path to the Temporary Files folder (Temp) is valid.
- Make sure their is enough space to run the program on the drive where the Temporary Files (Temp) folder exists.

Configuration notes

- A valid path for a temp folder on a Windows 2k or XP machine would be similar to this: C:\Documents and Settings\USER\Local Settings\Temp

- A valid path for a temp folder on a Windows NT computer would be similar to this: C:\Temp
- This issue is more likely on machines with several different users with different accounts, each user's account needs a valid Temp folder on a hard drive with enough room to run CuteFTP.

CONNECTING AFTER A 425 ERROR

If you receive an 425 error, or an error that says "Cannot open data connection" or "Cannot build data connection", try connecting in PASV mode. If you still cannot connect, you can try connecting via HTTP and port 80. Enter all your information as you would for an FTP site.

To connect via HTTP and port 80

1. From the menu, choose **File > New > HTTP Site**. The **Site Properties** dialog appears showing the **General** tab.
2. In **Label**, enter any name you would like for the site.
3. In **Host Address**, enter the regular FTP address for the site.
4. In **Username**, enter your user name for the site.
5. In **Password**, enter your password for the site.
6. Select **Connect**.

SOCKET ERROR 2000

This error generally occurs when port 21 is blocked on your computer. The port could be blocked by a firewall or a proxy server that has not been configured properly. Generally you'll see a log like this:

```
STATUS:> Connecting to server xxx.xxx.x.xx (ip=
xxx.xxx.x.xx)...
ERROR:> Can't connect to remote server. Socket error =
#2000.
ERROR:> Timeout (60000ms).
STATUS:> Waiting 30 seconds......
```

To avoid this error, open port 21 to inbound and outbound traffic. Most often a firewall (such as those from MacAfee, Norton or the built-in Windows XP firewall) is blocking inbound or outbound TCP traffic on port 21.

SOCKET ERROR = #10061

10061 is a **Connection Refused** error sent to you by the server. You could not make a connection because the target machine actively refused it. The most common cause is an incorrectly configured server, full server, or incorrect Port specified by the client.

To change your connection Port for an FTP site

1. Select the site in the **Site Manager**.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. Enter the correct port number in the **Port** text box.

Sometimes a 10061 error is caused by either a firewall or anti-virus software presence on the local computer or network connection. Either one may be blocking the ports needed to make a successful FTP connection to the server.

For a regular FTP session, please either disable the firewall or anti-virus software or configure it to allow CuteFTP to establish an FTP session over ports 20 and 21. Please consult the documentation or help file for your specific firewall or antivirus software product for further instructions. Usually, the manufacturer of the device or software has specific instructions available on their Web site.

If you continue to receive the same error after insuring ports 20 and 21 are open, please contact the administrator of the site where you are trying to connect.

SOCKET ERROR = #10060

10060 is a Connection Time-out error that usually appears when the client does not receive a response from the server for a specific command.

Most often this occurs when you try to connect in PASV mode to a server that prefers PORT for data connections. If you see an error log similar to the one following, right click the problem site and choose **Site Properties**, click the **TYPE** tab and change the **Data Connection Type** to **Use PORT**.

```
COMMAND:> PASV
227 Entering Passive Mode (xxx,xx,xxx,xx,x,xxx).
COMMAND:> LIST
STATUS:> Connecting ftp data socket xxx.xx.xxx.xx:xxxx...
ERROR:> Can't connect to remote server. Socket error =
#10060.
ERROR:> Failed to establish data socket.
```

If you still receive a 10060 error, the server may be trying to send a listing for a very large directory (with many thousands of files) causing the client to time-out while waiting. Try increasing the time-out value under **Tools > Global Options > Transfer > Reconnect and resume in [*n*] seconds if nothing received**, to a higher value, such as 45 or 60 seconds.

FAILED TO ESTABLISH DATA SOCKET

This error usually occurs when trying to connect in PASV mode to a site that only accepts PORT mode connections. Change the connection type from PASV mode to PORT mode to connect to the site.

To switch from PASV to PORT mode

1. In the **Site Manager**, select the problem site.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. In the **Data connection type** list, select **Use PORT**.
5. Select **OK**.

SOCKET ERRORS 10060, 10061, 10064, 10065

A socket error in the 10060 range is a Winsock error. It is generally caused by either outgoing connection problems or connection problems on the host end.

Firewall and AV Software

Outgoing connections can be affected by the presence of firewall or anti-virus software on the local computer or network connection. Either one may be blocking the ports needed to make a successful FTP connection to the remote server.

For a regular FTP session, please either disable the firewall or anti-virus software or configure it to allow CuteFTP to establish an FTP session over ports 20 and 21. Please consult the documentation or help file for your specific firewall or antivirus software product for further instructions. Usually the manufacturer of the device or software will also have specific instructions available on their Web site.

If you continue to receive the same error after insuring ports 20 and 21 are open, contact the administrator of the site you are trying to connect to.

Technical reasons for 1006x errors

WSAETIMEDOUT (10060)

1. The connection fails due to an error or timeout.
2. Verify that the destination IP address is correct.
3. Increase the connection timeout threshold under **Global Settings > Connection**.
4. Switch to the opposite data connection type (PASV or PORT) under **Site Settings > Type** tab.
5. Verify that the problem is not local by trying to connect to an alternate server.
6. If a server name was used, verify it resolves to the correct address.
7. If using a local server table for server name resolution, check to see that it doesn't resolve to an obsolete address.
8. Try pinging the address.
9. If you are using a router, verify the router is up and running (check by pinging it and then ping an address outside of the router).

10. Do a traceroute to the destination to verify all routers along the connection path are operational.
11. Verify that your subnet mask is setup properly.

WSAECONNREFUSED (10061)

1. The remote host actively refused the attempt to connect to it.
2. Verify that the destination server name or IP address is correct
3. Verify that the connection port number is correct (under Site Settings | Type tab).
4. The remote server may be temporarily or permanently inaccessible (try again later).
5. Verify that you have chosen the right protocol (SSH2, SSL, FTP, etc.) and have setup all required options for that protocol.
6. Verify that the destination IP address and port numbers are correct.
7. The remote server may be refusing multiple connections from the same client. Try using only one connection thread when connecting to this particular server (Site Settings | Options).
8. Try pinging the address.
9. If you are using a router, verify the router is up and running (check by pinging it and then ping an address outside of the router).
10. Do a traceroute to the destination to verify all routers along the connection path are operational.
11. Verify that your subnet mask is setup properly.

WSAESERVERDOWN (10064)

- The server is temporarily or permanently unreachable. Verify that the destination host name or IP address is correct and try again later.

WSAESERVERUNREACH (10065)

- The server is unreachable. Verify that the destination host name or IP address is correct and try again later.

SFTP ERROR #4

This is a general SFTP connection error. See Trouble Shooting SFTP connections for help.

ERROR 421 MESSAGES

Common Error 421 Problems

- Error 421 Service not available, closing control connection.
- Error 421 User limit reached
- Error 421 You are not authorized to make the connection
- Error 421 Max connections reached
- Error 421 Max connections exceeded

Possible Solutions

You can receive that 421 error if the FTP server you are connected to limits the total number of connections available or limits the connections available to one user. There are three things you can do:

1. Limit the number of connections to any one FTP site by selecting **Tools > Global Options > Connection** and set "Per site max connections /transfers" to 1 (By default it will be set to 2).
2. Remove items from the Transfer Queue. The Transfer Queue is where you see items ready for transfer, in transit, or just transferred. Sometimes the Queue Pane can become cluttered with unfinished transfers. To clear the queue, right-click inside it and choose **Remove All**.
3. Make sure only one instance of CuteFTP is running on your system. Open the Windows Task Manager and see if CuteFTP is listed more than once.

INSTALLSHIELD ERROR 1628: FAILED TO COMPLETE SCRIPT BASED INSTALL

Problem:

The following error message occurs at run time:

```
Error 1628: Failed to complete script based install.
```

More Information

The error message occurs at run time usually when you are trying to uninstall, repair, or update an installation. This error message is caused by the Windows Installer Service and is often caused by the installation itself.

Possible Cause 1

This error message is often caused when the uninstallation log file becomes corrupt. This can happen if the installation is somehow corrupt.

Fix: End the process that is running IDriver.exe via the Task Manager by following these steps:

1. Press Ctrl + Alt + Del and select Task Manager.
2. Go to the Processes tab.
3. Check the running processes for idriver.exe
4. If found, select the process and then select End Process.

Run the installation again to see if the error still occurs.

Possible Cause 2

This error can also occur if the Windows Installer Service is not properly configured on your computer or if the installation is created with a newer version of the Windows Installer Service than what exists on your computer.

Fix: To fix this issue, install the latest Windows Installer Service on your computer. Instructions and download links for the Windows Installer can be found below. Just click on the link for your operating system.

Windows 95/ 98/ Me:

http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?displaylang=en&FamilyID=CEBBACD8-C094-4255-B702-DE3BB768148F

Windows NT 4.0 or 2000:

http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=4b6140f9-2d36-4977-8fa1-6f8a0f5dca8f&DisplayLang=en

Windows XP:

Windows XP already contains Windows Installer version 2.0. Thus, you should not have to install the Windows Installer Service (MSI engine) on Windows XP.

Restart your computer and run the installation again to see if the error continues to occur.

Possible Cause 3

This error message may also occur if a file in the Temp directory is conflicting with the files being used by the installation while it is being run.

Fix: Delete the entire contents of the Temp directory using these steps:

1. Double-click the **My Computer** icon on your desktop or select **Start > Explore**.
2. Navigate to the location of the Temp directory, for example, C:\Windows\Temp.
3. Select **Edit > Select All**.
4. Select **File > Delete.**
5. Click **Yes** or **Yes to All** in the dialog that appears.

Run the installation again to see if the issue is resolved.

Can't connect to server

Making one or more minor configuration changes usually solves connection problems quite easily.

In the Log window there is a complete list of all communications and commands between CuteFTP and the FTP server you are trying to connect with. In that list there is at least one ERROR message in red. You probably need to scroll up to see it. That error message should tell you the specific reason why you cannot connect.

The most common problem is that the Host Address, the User Name or the Password has been entered incorrectly. Make sure all three pieces of information exactly match what the administrator of the Server you are connecting with provided.

Cannot see files or folders

If you cannot see your directory listing or files you can try these solutions to display files or folders.

YOUR CONNECTION LOG SHOWS A LIST-L COMMAND INSTEAD OF THE NORMAL LIST

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Navigation Settings > Links**.
2. Clear the **Resolve links by sending LIST-L command** check box.
3. Select **OK**.
4. Try to connect.

CHANGE CONNECTION TYPE

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Select **Connection**.
3. In the **Connection type** box, choose **PASV**.
4. Select **OK**.
5. Try to connect. If you cannot connect, follow the same steps, but choose **PORT**.

TURN OFF ALL FILTERS

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. Seelct the problem site.
3. Right-click the site and select **Site Properties**.
4. Select the **Actions** tab.
5. Select **Filter**.
6. Clear the **Enable filtering** check box.
7. Select **Connect**.

USE THE -L FILTER ON THE SERVER

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. Select the problem site.
3. Right-click the site and click **Site Properties**.
4. Select the **Actions** tab.
5. Select **Filter**.
6. Select the **Enable filtering** check box.
7. Select the **Enable server side filtering** check box.
8. Enter -L in the **Remote** field.
9. Select **Connect**.

CHANGE SERVER HOST TYPE

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.

2. Select the problem site.
3. Right-click the site and click **Site Properties**.
4. Select the **Type** tab.
5. Change the **Host Type** from **Auto-Detect** to the first specific server.
6. Select **Connect**.
7. If that does not work, try the next host type on the list.

SEND AN EXTENDED LOG TO TECHNICAL SUPPORT

If none of the solutions discussed here work, please obtain a raw directory listing and submit it along with details of the problem to GlobalSCAPE's technical support team.

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > General > Logs**.
2. Select the **Enable extended list in session log window (raw listing - for debugging)** checkbox.
3. Reconnect to the problem site.
4. Once connected, right-click in the log pane located directly beneath the Remote Pane.
5. Select **Copy entire log to clipboard**.
6. Paste the selection (hold down **Ctrl** and press **V**) into an e-mail message.
7. Describe the problem, what you have already tried and include information on the system you are using.
8. Submit your support request using our support submission form.

Can't connect to SSH2 (SFTP) sites

SSH2 CONNECTIONS FAIL IF THE CLIENT OR SERVER IS NOT PROPERLY CONFIGURED.

If you are having difficulty connecting to your SFTP server, refer to the following SSH2 Connection Checklist:

1. Verify that the server you are connecting to supports **SFTP connections (see Note below)**.
2. Verify the connection port. SFTP usually occurs over **port 22**.
3. Try toggling the **compression** options in the **SSH2 Security** page
4. Verify the authentication mechanism supported and required by the server. It may require **password**, **public key** (identity file), or **both (see Important note below)**.
5. If public key authentication is required, be sure to provide a copy of the public key you created to the server's administrator, as it must be in the server's **trusted list** in order for you to connect.
6. If the server administrator created a public key for you, be sure to replace your existing one with it and select the provided key from within the **SSH2 Security** page.

7. Copy the connection log to a text file or e-mail to assist in troubleshooting when contacting your FTP or Web service provider or the GlobalSCAPE support team.

Note:
CuteFTP Professional supports SFTP, which is a secure service provided by the SSH2 host, in which the server both encrypts the data and handles the file transfer. This should not be confused with FTP over SSH2, in which the SSH2 uses port forwarding to forward standard FTP transactions over an encrypted tunnel, with the actual file transfer being handled by a separate (and non-secure) FTP server

Public key authentication

To use public key authentication, you must send your public key to the server administrator before making an SSH2 connection. If the server is running OpenSSH, convert the public key as described below:

1. Create an identity file in the client.
2. Send the public key (Identity.pub) to the server administrator (via FTP, e-mail, etc.)
3. The server administrator *must* convert the public key to OpenSSH, check it with *wordcount*, and add it to *authorized_keys*.

   Command sequence:

```
ssh-keygen -i -f Identity.pub > sshpub
wc sshpub
cat sshpub > ~\.ssh\authorized_keys
```

Note:
Wordcount should return a "1" as the first number. OpenSSH is going to ask for the identity files password the first time you log in. If CuteFTP fails to connect, please contact our support team and provide the kernel version, OpenSSH build, and the CuteFTP Professional build number (to find that, choose **Help > About** from the menu.).

Cannot create multiple connections to the same server

If CuteFTP Professional does not open new connections when you try to start new sessions, or if it does not let you browse while transferring files, you can force CuteFTP to open new connections.

TO OPEN MULTIPLE CONCURRENT CONNECTIONS

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.

2. Select a site in the **Site Manager**.
3. From the menu, choose **File > Connection > Connect**.
4. Repeat step 3 to create more connections to the same site.

TO CONFIGURE CUTEFTP TO OPEN NEW CONNECTIONS FOR MULTIPLE TRANSFERS

1. Go to **Tools > Global Options > Transfer**.
2. Clear the **Transfer files over the browse session** check box.
3. Go to **Tools > Global Options > Connection**.
4. Make sure the value under **Per site max connections/transfers** value is greater than 1.

Copy and Paste removes files from the remote folder

FTP Servers do not support a "Copy" command. If you use "Copy" then "Paste" you actually move the file to the new location on the server, and the file is removed from the old location. You can "Cut & Paste" the file back if you need to restore the original file. This is a limitation of the FTP protocol.

To copy a file or folder from one remote folder to another

1. Download the file.
2. Upload the file to the new location. Another option is to perform a site-to-site transfer.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- Not all servers allow site-to-site transfers
- You can accomplish a copy by downloading the file and then uploading again to the new destination folder, or by performing a site to site transfer on the same site (if the server allows it).
- The copy command is in the menu, because you CAN copy files from the remote to the local pane, or to the queue, etc.

Can't download files from a VMS server

PROBLEM:

When connected to a VMS server, downloads start, reach approximately 98% and never complete. They continually restart and try to complete but never do.

SOLUTION:

From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Transfer > Smart Overwrite > Advanced Options.** Clear the check in **Use SIZE and MDTM commands to gather precise details.**

Site-to-site transfer limitations

You can connect to two servers and transfer files between them using FXP (File eXchange Protocol). FXP lets you copy files from one FTP server to another. CuteFTP Professional supports this mechanism for transferring files between sites.

When you transfer files between two remote hosts using an FXP client, the maximum transfer speed does not depend on your connection but only on the connection between the two hosts, which is usually much faster than your own connection. Because it is a direct connection you will not be able to see the progress or the transfer speed of the files.

Although FXPing is very easy, there are a few restrictions to transferring the files. Both hosts have to support PASV mode and must allow PORT commands to foreign hosts. The FXP client tells the destination FTP server to listen for a connection by sending a "PASV" command. The source FTP server then connects to the data port reported by the destination server (after a successful PASV command) All the data then goes directly from the source to the destination server and both servers only report fail/success messages to the FTP client.

High memory usage

If CuteFTP (specifically its Transfer Engine) is working for extended periods of time, it may begin to consume large amounts of system resources (memory and hard drive space) due to log and queue requirements.

You can set CuteFTP to remove successful items from the queue to help alleviate this problem.

TO REMOVE SUCCESSFUL ITEMS FROM THE QUEUE

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > Transfer > Events**.
2. Select **Navigation Settings**.
3. Select the **Remove successfully finished items from the queue automatically** check box.
4. Select **OK**.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- Successful items are removed even if tasks were run without the user interface open.
- Each finished queue item takes up about 500 bytes of memory until the Transfer Engine is closed.
- Turn off logging to further improve resource management.

TO DISABLE LOGGING

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options > General > Logs**.
2. Select **Logs**.
3. Clear the check boxes for logs you won't be needing.
4. Select **OK**.

Transferring to case sensitive servers

Some servers are case sensitive and will treat two items with the same name typed in different case as two different files. For instance, if you sent a file called TEST.txt to a case sensitive server that already had a file called test.txt, you would not be prompted to overwrite the destination file, instead the server would keep both files. If you connect to such a site in CuteFTP, CuteFTP will treat the files as the same, unless you change settings for the site.

TO SET A SITE AS CASE SENSITIVE

1. Select the site in the **Site Manager**.
2. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
3. Select the **Type** tab.
4. In the **Server type** list choose **Unix-compatible**.

Overwrite prompts me again and again

If you are getting numerous overwrite prompts and want to avoid receiving them in the future, configure a default rule for the overwrite configuration panel.

TO ADD A RULE

1. From the menu, choose **Tools > Global Options**.
2. Expand **Transfer** and select **Smart Overwrite**
3. In the **For matching files** list, choose **Use Rules**.
4. Select **Ignore zero byte files** .
5. In the **For matching folders** list, choose **Use Rules**.
6. Select **Configure Rules**. The **Overwrite Rules** dialog appears.
7. In the **If the destination file date is** list select **older**.
8. In the **and size is** list select **smaller**.
9. In the **during** list select **any transfer**.
10. In the **then** list select **overwrite**.
11. Select **Add**. The new rule displays in the list. Add more rules as needed. Here are some recommendations:

- If destination file date is **the same** and size is **the same** during **any transfer** then **skip**
- If destination file date is **older** and size is **different** during **any transfer** then **overwrite**
- If destination file date is **no matter** and size is **smaller** during **any transfer** then **resume**
- If destination file date is **newer** and size is **larger** during **any transfer** then **skip**

12. Select **OK**. The **Overwrite Rules** dialog disappears.
13. In the **Prompt timeout action** list, choose **Skip**.
14. Select **Timeout in**, and leave the time at **30 seconds**.
15. Select **Use LIST to determine overwrite status**.
16. Select **Use SIZE and MDTM to determine overwrite status**.
17. Select **OK**.

Using the ACCT command

You can establish a connection and then supply the ACCT command for servers that require it.

TO USE ACCT WITH OR WITHOUT AN FTP PROXY

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager**. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
2. Select the **Options** tab, and choose **Use site-specific option** under the **Site-specific configuration options** drop down menu.
3. Select **Proxy**. The **Proxy** dialog box appears.
4. In the **Proxy type** list, select your proxy type.
5. Select the **Use authentication** check box.
6. Type the password (for ACCT) in the **Password** field.
7. Make sure the **HOST** and **PORT** field are identical to your site's host and port as specified in the **General** and **Type** tabs.
8. Select **Advanced**. The **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog appears.
9. Select **CUSTOM**.
10. Add the following variables. Select **Enter** after each one:
    - USER %user%
    - PASS %pass%
    - ACCT %fire_pass%
11. Select **OK** to close the **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog.
12. Select **OK** again to close the **Proxy** dialog.
13. Select **Connect** or **Exit**.

TO USE ACCT WITH AN FTP PROXY

1. Select a site in the **Site Manager**. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**.
2. Select the **Options** tab, and choose **Use site-specific option** under the **Site-specific configuration options** drop down box.
3. Select **Proxy**. The **Proxy** window appears.
4. In the **Proxy type** list, select **FTP proxy**.
5. Select the **Use authentication** check box.
6. Type the password (for ACCT) in the **Password** field.
7. Select **Advanced**. The **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog appears.
8. Select **USER/PASS/ACCT**.
9. Select **OK** to close the **Advanced Proxy Settings** dialog.
10. Select **OK** again to close the **Proxy** dialog.
11. Select **Connect** or **Exit**.

Using CuteFTP behind a router

In most cases, CuteFTP does not have any problems working behind a router. If you are having problems, try doing all your transfers in PASV mode.

IF CONNECTIONS OR TRANSFERS STILL FAIL:

1. Check with the FTP server administrator to make certain the Server and it's network are configured to allow FTP in PASV mode.
2. Check your router documentation for information on how to set it up for FTP, or how to open the appropriate ports. FTP generally uses port 21.
3. You can define a port range for CuteFTP to operate with under **Tools > Global Options > Transfer Settings > Limit local port range from n to n.**
4. You can try using UPnP (if your NAT or router supports it) to establish a connection properly. You can turn on port mapping under the **Tools > Global Options > Connection** tab.

CONFIGURATION NOTES

- To perform transfers in PORT mode, or for secure transfers, refer to your router's documentation for information on how to configure the router for such transfers.
- If you are behind a NAT firewall, and the Secure FTP server is on a different network, you can only make data transfers in PORT mode using a Clear Command Channel SSL connection.

Using CuteFTP with Norton Internet Security 2004

If you have Norton Internet Security 2004 installed on the same computer as CuteFTP, you will need to adjust a setting in the Norton program to allow CuteFTP to make connections and transfers.

Allowing CuteFTP to make connections will not compromise the other security settings in Norton Internet Security 2004.

TO USE CUTEFTP WITH NORTON INTERNET SECURITY 2004

1. Open Norton Internet Security 2004. You can open it by clicking the Norton Internet Security icon on your task bar.
2. In the **Norton Internet Security** window, select **Personal Firewall**.
3. In the lower right, select **Configure**. A dialog with tabs opens.
4. Select the **Programs** tab.
5. In the **Manual Program Control** section, scroll down to find **ftpte.exe** row.
6. In the **Internet Access** column of the **ftpte.exe** row, click the down arrow next to **Block All**.
7. In the list that appears, select **Permit All**.
8. Select **OK**. Norton Internet Security 2004 should now allow CuteFTP to make connections and transfers.

Cannot download executables

If you use remote filters while connecting with some Unix or Linux servers, CuteFTP may not be able to download some of the files. You can download the files by simply turning off the filters.

TO TURN OFF REMOTE FILTERS

1. Select the **Site Manager** tab.
2. Select the site with files you want to download.
3. From the menu, choose **File > Properties**. The **Site Properties** dialog appears.
4. Select the **Actions** tab.
5. Select **Filter**. The **Filter** dialog appears.
6. Delete any filters listed in **Remote filter**. You do not need to delete the **-L** filter.
7. Select **OK** to close the **Filter** dialog.
8. Select **Connect** to close the **Site Properties** dialog and connect to your site.
9. Download your files.

Can't connect from Windows XP

Some versions of Windows XP have an Internet Firewall built in, which is active by default and blocks FTP traffic. You can turn off this firewall.

TO TURN OFF THE WINDOWS XP FIREWALL

Follow the instructions Microsoft has posted at
http://www.microsoft.com/WINDOWSXP/home/using/howto/homenet/icf.asp

Truncated listings

If you connect to a server and you see **266-Options: -1** or **226 Output truncated to 2000 matches**, it means the server cannot display more than 2000 items in file listings. This is a limitation of the server and not CuteFTP.

Help with scripts

Due to the wide range of scripts that CuteFTP Professional is able to accommodate we are unable to offer technical support on individual scripts, other than what is available in the help files and online Knowledge Base.

If you are having trouble with your script, try to perform the desired action manually, using the CuteFTP GUI. If you cannot, then troubleshoot that problem first and then re-try your script.

If you are able to perform the desired actions, and in the desired sequence when using the GUI, then the problem is not with CuteFTP or the FTP Server. The next thing to do is to troubleshoot your script line by line.

The **Transfer Engine** section has extensive scripting examples and help.

Unable to connect to Titan FTP server when using SSL

Disable **Reuse cached session for data connection** under **Tools > Global Options > Security > SSL Security** and try again.

Firewall problems

Outgoing connections can be affected by the presence of firewall or anti-virus software on the local computer or network connection. Either one may be blocking the ports needed to make a successful FTP connection to the remote server.

If you are using a personal firewall software package please configure it so that ports 20 and 21 are open. It may also be necessary to grant specific permission for CuteFTP to access those ports. If you need help configuring your personal firewall software please consult the documentation or the support section of their Web site.

Symantec (Norton) support site:
http://www.symantec.com/techsupp/support_options.html

McAfee support site:
http://www.mcafeehelp.com

Microsoft has complete instructions on how to disable the Internet Connection Firewall built into some versions of Windows XP.
http://www.microsoft.com/WINDOWSXP/home/using/howto/homenet/icf.asp

Conserve Local File Time feature doesn't work properly when connected to Serv-u FTP Server

Problem

When using CuteFTP (Home and Professional) to connect to Serv-u, the "Conserve Local File Time" feature doesn't work properly.

Cause

The MDTM command is supposed to be used for *retrieving* a file's time from the server. However, CuteFTP and various other FTP clients use the MDTM command change (*set*) an uploaded file's timestamp as well.

The official draft documenting the MDTM command (draft-ietf-ftpext-mlst-16.txt) makes no provisions for using the MDTM command to *set* the file time stamp, so various clients and servers have ended up implementing the command differently.

The typical command syntax is MDTM YYYYMMDDHHMMSS FILENAME, where the HHMMSS is either the client's actual local time zone, or in the case of some FTP clients, GMT (Greenwich Meridian Time), which mimics the *retrieve* behavior of MDTM as documented in section 2.3 of the afore mentioned IETF draft.

A couple servers, such as Serv-u, have extended the MDTM command even further, adding a time zone parameter to the end of the MDTM command, as follows: MDTM YYYYMMDDHHMMSS[+-TZ] FILENAME.

CuteFTP does not support this proprietary [+-TZ] parameter. Also, CuteFTP sends the local time for the HHMMSS portion of the MDTM command sequence, not the GMT time. Unfortunately, Serv-u (and potentially a couple other FTP servers) expect the time to be sent in GMT, and automatically adjust the time for the file, causing it to be different than what the client expected.

Example

CuteFTP retrieves a listing. File time shows 8:55 AM:

```
-rw-rw-rw-   1 user     group       20249 May 14 08:55
Reports.cfc
```

CuteFTP does an MDTM *retrieve* time to determine what the remote file's time is.
Notice the server sends 12:55 PM, adding 4 hrs. due to the server's time difference and GMT:

```
COMMAND:>       MDTM Reports.cfc
                213 20040514125501
```

CuteFTP uploads the replacement Reports.cfc file:

```
STOR Reports.cfc
```

CuteFTP issues an MDTM command to *set* the time according the actual date and LOCAL time of the file, 12:55 PM:

```
COMMAND:>       MDTM 20040514125501 Reports.cfc
```

Subsequently we retrieve the list from the server. Notice the time, 8:55 AM.

```
-rw-rw-rw-   1 user     group       20249 May 14 08:55
Reports.cfc
```

Notice that the server didn't write the 12:55 timestamp as requested. Instead, it assumed the timestamp was in GMT and subtracted 4 hours.

Workaround

There are no known workarounds.

Solution

Don't turn on this feature when connecting to Serv-U or other FTP servers that modify the time sent as part of the MDTM *set* sequence.

Public key authentication failing

Attempting to connect in CuteFTP Professional to WinSSHD using Public Key authentication only seems to fail.

After you set up an account for public key authentication you will still have to enter a password the first time you log in. This is because when you set up public key authentication for an account and set the authentication type to **Pwd OR Key**, WinSSHD still must cache the password so that you can log in with just the public key. Therefore, on your first login

attempt after you set up public key authentication, WinSSHD asks you for a password to store in the cache, even if your client already authenticated successfully using a public key. When this happens, just supply a valid password. When you log in after that, the password will be cached and you won't have to enter it again.

14

Index

.

.htaccess 79

.profile hidden 79

1

10054 199

10060 199

10061 ..... 199, 204

10066 199

10068 199

110 199

120 199

125 199

150 199

2

200 199

2000 204

2000 matches 216

202 199

211 199

212 199

213 199

214 199

215 199

220 199

221 199

225 199

226 ..... 199, 216

227 199

230 199

250 199

257 199

3

331 199

332 199

350 199

3DES 43

4

421 199

425 199

425 error 204

425 workaround 204

426 199

450 199

451 199

452 199

5

500 child died 203

501 199

502 199

502 PASV 199

503 199

504 199

530 199

532 199

550 199

552 199

553 199

A

About 5

Accept certificates 36

Access blocked 216

Add....49
Add a site....24
Add buttons....19
Add commands....27
Add custom commands....70
Agreement....219
ARCFour....43
Are you sure?....18
ASCII....66, 101
Audio....110
Authentication....41, 42, 43, 45
AutoCloseMethod....142
Automate....69, 70
Automatic renaming....100
Automatic tasks....69
Auto-reconnect....89

B

Backup....83
behind a router....88
Behind router....215
Binary....66, 101
Blowfish....43
Bookmarks....29, 55
Broken transfer....60
Browser....120
button bar....17
buttons....17, 19

C

Cab files....68
Cable modem....90
Cannot build data connection....204
Cannot connect....204
Cannot connect with SSL....215
Cannot resolve host....202
cannot see htaccess....79
cannot see profile....79
Cannot transfer....202
Can't build data connection....204
Can't chmod....78
Can't connect....216
Can't connect with SSL....215
Can't login to SFTP site....210
Cast128....43
CCC....37
CDC....37
Certificate....45, 96
Certificate Authority....35
Certificate signing request....35
Certificates....36
Change interface....13
Change permissions....78
Change site....50
Check files....67
Check transfers....67
Child died....203
child transfer....203
CHMOD....78
CHMOD not allowed....78
Choose certificate....35
Cipher....43, 95
Classic interface....13
Clear command channel....37
clear data channel....37
Clear Queue....104
Clipboard....61
Close....120
command channel....37
Commands....27
Compress....68
Compression....68
Concurrent....28
Confirm delete....31, 48
Connect....25, 40, 41
Connect securely....26
Connect to SSH2 site....41
Connect with SSL....33
Connect with TLS....33
Connecting....25
Connection....17, 25, 27, 88, 92, 204
Connection errors....19
Connection failed....204

Connection failure 210
Connection log 16, 17
Connection options 88
Connection refused 204
Connection retries 88
Connection settings 88
Connection timeout 204
Connection Wizard 24
CRC checksum 67
Create 119
Create certificate 96
Create certificates 34
Create SSH2 certificate 95
Custom Commands 70
Custom commands bar 17
Customize toolbar 19
CuteFTP interface 13
CuteFTP Pro 5

D

Data channel 37
data socket 205
Data socket error 205
DCOMCNFG 142
Default download folder 85
Delay between retries 88
Delete 18, 75
Delete confirmation 31, 48
Delete logs 87
Delete prompt 18
Delete site 55
Details 76
Dial-up connection 90
Directory information 106
directory view 17
display 15, 16, 17, 108
display directory 17
display files 16, 78, 79
display folder 17
display folders 16, 78
display pane 16
display queue pane 16
Display Site Manager 15
display toolbars 17
display transfer 16, 17
Distribution 222
Do not resolve links 106
Document 119
Download 6, 57
Download folder 85
Downloads 97
DSL modem 90
DUN 90

E

Edit 75
Edit HTML 119
Edit properties 50
Edit remote document 119
Edit site 50
Edit toolbar 17
Empty queue 104
encrypted data 37
Encryption 37, 43, 47
encryt commands 37
End User License agreement 219
Error 204, 205, 216
Error 2000 204
Error 226 216
Error about resolving host name 202
Error failed to establish data socket 205
Error messages 31, 48
Error numbers 199
Error prompts 19
Error socket 204
errors 199
Establish data socket 205
Execute macro 70
Execute permission 78
Exit 85
Explicit encryption 37
Export sites 49

F

F filter 216
F flag 216
Failed 205
Failed child transfer 203
Failed connection 204
failed data socket 205
Failed log in 210
failed to establish data socket 205
Failed to establish socket 205
FAQ 7
Favorites 29, 55
File details 76
File display 76
File download 6, 57
File editor 112
File filter 78
File list 76
File names 75
File permission 78
File sort 76
File transfer 6, 57
File upload 6, 57
File viewer 112
File>Close 120
File>New 119
File>Open 119
files 78
Filter 63
filter files 78
Filter folders 78
Filters 78, 216
Find 55
Finished transfers 104
Firewall 92, 215, 216
Firewall connection 215
Flag 216
folder 17
Folder details 76
Folder display 76
Folder filter 78
Folder list 76
Folder Monitor 83
Folder permission 78
Folder sort 76
Folder synchronization 155
Folder transfer failed 203
folder view 17
folders 78
Frequently asked questions 7
FTP commands 73
FTPS 26
Full or partial html edit screen 113
FXP 64

G

General settings 85
Global max connections 28
Grid lines 108
Group deselect 77
Group select 77
Gzip 68

H

Hang 202, 208
Hang at list 202, 208
Hang no connect 202
Hang no list 208
Hanging 202, 208
hangs 202
Hangs at list 202, 208
Head tags 121
Hidden files 79, 208
hide 15, 16, 17
Hide individual session logs 17
hide pane 16
hide queue 16
Hide Site Manager 15
hide toolbars 17
Host 91, 202
Host name 202
Host name error 202

host type 55
How chmod 78
How to chmod 78
How to use with a router 215
htaccess 79
htaccess cannot see 79
htaccess hidden 79
HTML 119, 120
HTML Divisions 121
HTML editor 119
HTML editor bar 17
HTML headers 121
HTML Headings 121
HTML structure 121
HTML tags toolbar 17
HTTP 25, 84
HTTP connection 204
HTTP directories 84
HTTP file listings 84
HTTP folders 84
HTTPS 26, 40

I

I use a router 215
icon 57
Implicit encryption 37
Import certificate 36
Import sites 49
Individual log 17
Individual log windows 108
Internet connection 90
Internet security 2004 215
Interrupted transfer 60
Invert selection 77

K

Key pair 41, 42, 45, 95
keyboard 13
keyboard shortcuts 13
keys 13

L

LAN 90
Large icons 76
Launch 85
License 219
Link resolution 106
Links 106
Linux server 216
List 76
Loading a queue 71
Local Area Network 90
Local drives 16
local files 16
local folders 16
Lockstep Folder Navigation 18
Log 16, 17
Log duration 87
Log files 87
log in 210
log in failed 210
Log in to SFTP site 210
Log location 87
log pane 16, 17
log window 16, 17

M

MAC 43, 95
Macro 69, 70
Macro execute 70
Macro record 69
Macro run 70
Macro start 70
Maintain connection 27, 89
Manual transfer 72
Manually enter commands 73
Match folders 82, 155
Max connections 28, 88
Max connections per site 28
MDAC 195
Messages 31, 48
Microsoft Data Access Components 195
Mirror 82
Mirror both 82, 155

Mirror local 82, 155
Mirror remote 82, 155
Mode Z 66
Modify 75
Modify properties 50
Modify site 50
Monitor local 83
Move files 6, 57
Multi-part download 65
Multi-part transfers 65
Multi-part upload 65
Multiple 28
Multi-thread transfer 65

N

Navigation 104
Navigation toolbar 17
Network connection 90
New 119
New IP address 27
New site 24
No data connection 204
Norton 215
Norton firewall 215
Norton Internet Security 215
Norton security 215
Not connecting 202
Number codes 199
Numbered error codes 199

O

Old interface 13
Oops child died 203
Open 75, 119
Output truncated 216
Overwrite 102

P

Pane 16
Password 41, 47
Passwords 94
PASV 215
PASV mode 88, 205
Persistent transfers 97
Personal firewall 215
Pop-up errors 19
PORT 215
Port 80 204
PORT mode 88, 205
Preview 120
Print 120
Print setup 120
Private key 41, 42, 43, 45
Pro interface 13
profile 79
Prompt 18
Prompt before delete 18
protecting passwords 47
Proxy 91, 92
Public key 41, 42, 43, 45

Q

Questions 7
queue 16
queue icon 57
Queue items 104
Queue toolbar 17
Quick connect 25
Quick connect bar 17
Quit command 88

R

Random commands 27
raw FTP commands 73
Read permissions 78
Reconnect after disconnection 27
Record macro 69
Recursive chmod 78
Refresh 75
Refresh folders 75
Refused connection 204
Registered trademarks 223
Reject certificates 36
Remote backup 83
Remote edit 119

Remote filters 216
Remove 75
Remove buttons 19
Remove commands 27
Remove finished transfers 104
Remove site 55
Remove successful items 104
Rename 75
Resolve 202
Resolve links 106
Restart 60
Restart transfer 59
resume 60, 102
Retry 88
Retry delay 88
Reusing a queue 71
router 88, 215
Rules for renaming 100
Run macro 70

S

Save 49, 119
Save macro 69
Saving the queue 71
Schedule 62
Schedule transfers 62
scripts 69
Search 55
secure connection 26
Secure Shell 41, 43
Secure site-to-site connections 26
Secure socket layer 96
Security 40, 41, 47, 94, 95
Security settings 96
Select certificate 35
Selection 77
Server certificates 36
Server type 55
Session 16, 17
Session log 16, 17
SFTP 26
SFTP locks up 210
SFTP2 94
Short list 216
shortcuts 13
Show file 208
Show files 79
Show log 16
Sign certificate 35
Simultaneous 28
Site 24, 49
Site backup 83
Site listings 49
Site Manager 15, 24, 49, 50, 55
Site properties 50
Site settings 50
Site-to-site 64
Skip 102
Small icons 76
Smart keep alive 27, 89
Smart overwrite 102
Smart renaming 100
Smart sorting 108
Socket error 204, 205
Socket error # 10061 204
Socket error #10061 204
Socket error = #10061 204
Socket error = 10061 204
Socket error=#10061 204
Socket error=10061 204
Sockets 91
SOCKS 91
Socks4 91
Socks5 91
Sort files 76
Sort folders 76
Sort list 76
Sorting 108
Sounds 110
SSH 41
ssh? 41
SSH2 ..... 41, 42, 43, 45, 95, 210

SSH2 certificate 95
SSH2 Ciphers 95
SSH2 connections 26
SSH2 MACs 95
SSL 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 94
SSL certificates 34, 35
SSL connections 26, 33
SSL security 96
SSL version 3 26
standard buttons 17
Standard lexicographic sorting 108
standard toolbar 17
Start macro 70
Start Transfer Engine 85
Startup 85
status 17, 199
status bar 17
Status numbers 199
Stay connected 27
Stop 59
Stop transfer 59
Successful transfers 104
Switch interface 13
Synchronization 82
Synchronize 155
System tray 85

T

Table of Contents files 106
tar 68
Tarball 68
TE in system tray 85
Thumbnail View 20
Time stamp 97
Timeout 204
Timing 27
TLS 33, 34
TLS certificates 34
TLS connections 26, 33
TOC 106
Tolerance 107
toolbars 17, 19, 108
Trademarks 223
Transfer 6, 57, 60, 63, 66, 97, 101
Transfer Engine 222
Transfer from clipboard 61
transfer icon 57
transfer items 16
Transfer log 16, 17
Transfer manually 72
transfer queue 16
Transfer through a router 215
Transferring from one site to another 64
transfers 62, 64, 69
Transport layer 43
Triple DES 43
Truncated 216
Truncated list 216
Truncated match 216
Truncated output 216
Trusted certificates 36
Trusted identity 95
Twofish 43

U

unencrypted commands 37
unencrypted data 37
Unix server 216
Update 75
Update listings 75
Upload 6, 57
Upload hangs 202
Uploads 97
Use bookmarks 29, 55
Use data compression 210
Using custom commands 70
Using filters 78

V

Verify files 67
Verify transfer 67, 97
View 75, 76, 120
view directory 17

view folder 17
View toolbar 17

W

WarFTP 107
Web 120
Web sites 25
What if I use a router 215
What is failed to establish data socket ... 205
Why child transfer failed 203
Why failed to establish data socket 205
Windows XP 216
Winsock 205
Write permissions 78

Z

Zip files 68